CITROËN

CITROËN BERLINGO

HANDBOOK

INSPIRED BY YOU

Access to the Handbook

MOBILE APPLICATION

Install the **Scan MyCitroën** application (content available offline).

Then select:

– the vehicle,

– the issue period corresponding to the vehicle's initial registration date.

ONLINE

Visit the **CITROËN** website and select the '**MyCITROËN**' section to view or download the handbook or go to the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

– the language,

– the vehicle and body style,

– the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the vehicle's initial registration date.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën Berlingo.
This document presents the key information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with this document and the Warranty and Maintenance Record.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this guide.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.

Key

This key allows you to identify the special features of your vehicle:

5 seats

7 seats

Overview

Labels 4

Eco-driving

Eco-coaching 8

1 Instruments

Instrument Panel 9
Warning and indicator lamps 11
Indicators 16
Trip computer 21
Setting the date and time 22

2 Access

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key, 23
Back-up procedures 27
Central locking / unlocking 30
Doors 31
General recommendations for the sliding side doors 31
Alarm 33
Electric windows 35
Tilting rear door windows 36

3 Ease of use and comfort

General recommendations for the seats 37
Front seats 37
Steering wheel adjustment 40
Mirrors 40
Rear bench seat (row 2) 41
Rear seats (row 2) 42
Rear seats (row 3) 43
Interior fittings 45
Two-position luggage cover shelf (removable) 50
Luggage cover (7-seat) 51
Warning triangle 52
Heating and Ventilation 52
Heating 53
Manual air conditioning 53
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 53
Front demisting - defrosting 55
Rear screen demisting - defrosting 56
Rear heating and air conditioning 57
Additional heating/ventilation system 57

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 61
Direction indicators 62
Automatic illumination of headlamps 62
Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps 63
Parking lamps 63
Automatic headlamp dipping 63
Headlamp beam height adjustment 65
Wiper control stalk 65
Changing a wiper blade 67
Automatic wiping 67

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 69
Emergency or assistance call 69
Hazard warning lamps 72
Horn 73
Electronic stability control (ESC) 73
Advanced Grip Control 75
Hill Assist Descent Control 76
Seat belts 77
Airbags 79
Child seats 82
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 84
ISOFIX child seats 87
i-Size child seats 90
Manual child lock 91
Electric child lock 91

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 92
Starting/switching off the engine 93
Manual parking brake 96
Electric parking brake 97
Hill start assist 99
5-speed manual gearbox 100
6-speed manual gearbox 100
Automatic gearbox 101
Gear efficiency indicator 104
Stop & Start 104
Under-inflation detection 106
Head-up display 107
Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 108
Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation 110
Speed limiter 113
Cruise control - particular recommendations 115
Programmable cruise control 115
Adaptive Cruise Control 118
Memorising speeds 121
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 122
Active Lane Departure Warning System 124
Blind Spot Monitoring System 127

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System 129
Distraction detection 129
Parking sensors 130
Top Rear Vision 132
Park Assist 134

Practical information 7

Compatibility of fuels 140
Refuelling 140
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 141
Snow chains 142
Towing device 142
Towing device with quickly detachable towball 144
Energy economy mode 144
Roof bars / Roof rack 145
Bonnet 146
Engine compartment 147
Checking levels 147
Speed checks 149
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 151
Free-wheeling 153
Advice on care and maintenance 153

In the event of a breakdown 8

Running out of fuel (Diesel) 155
Tool kit 155
Temporary puncture repair kit 156
Spare wheel 158
Changing a bulb 161
Changing a fuse 167
12 V battery 169
Towing 172

Technical data 9

Dimensions 175
Engine technical data and towed loads 176
Identification markings 181

Bluetooth® audio system 10

First steps 182
Steering mounted controls 182
Menus 183
Radio 184
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 185
Media 186
Telephone 188
Frequently asked questions 191

CITROËN Connect Radio 11

First steps 194
Steering mounted controls 195
Menus 196
Applications 197
Radio 197
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 199
Media 199
Telephone 201
Settings 204
Frequently asked questions 206

CITROËN Connect Nav 12

First steps 208
Steering mounted controls 209
Menus 209
Voice commands 211
Navigation 214
Connected navigation 217
Applications 219
Radio 222
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 223
Media 224
Telephone 225
Settings 228
Frequently asked questions 229

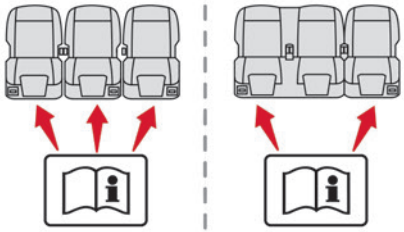
Alphabetical index ■

Access to additional videos

bit.ly/helpPSA

Labels

“General recommendations for seats” section:



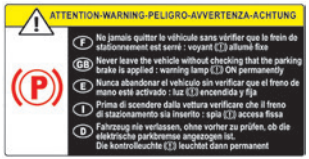
“Additional heating/ventilation” section:

“Deactivating the front passenger airbag” section:

“ISOFIX child seats” section:

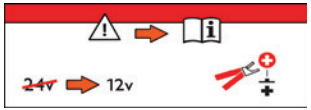
“Manual child lock” section:

“Electric parking brake” section:

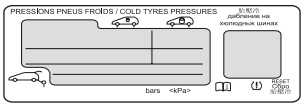


“Bonnet” and “Changing a bulb” sections:

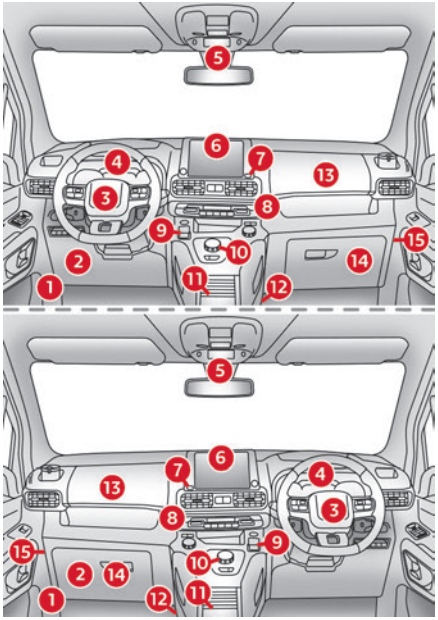
“12 V battery” section:



“Temporary puncture repair kit” and “Spare wheel” sections:



Instruments and controls

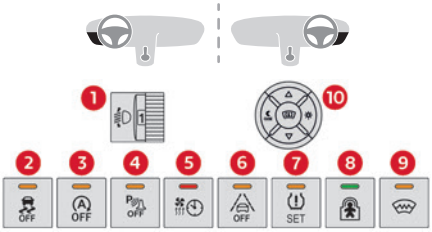


1. Bonnet release
2. Dashboard fuses
3. Horn
4. Instrument panel
5. Alarm
   Courtesy lamp
   Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
   Panoramic roof blind control
   Interior rear view mirror
   Monitoring mirror
   Emergency and assistance call buttons
6. Monochrome screen with audio system
   Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav
7. USB port
8. Heating
   Manual air conditioning
   Dual-zone automatic air conditioning
   Front demisting - defrosting
   Rear screen demisting – defrosting
9. Electric parking brake
   "START/STOP" button
10. Gearbox
11. 12 V socket
12. 230 V accessory socket
13. Glove box
    USB port (inside the glove box)
14. Glove box
15. Front passenger airbag deactivation (on the side of the glove box, with the door open)

Steering mounted controls

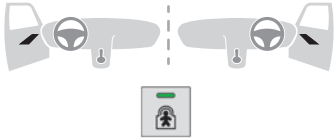
1. External lighting / direction indicators control stalk
   Voice recognition activation button
2. Wiper / screenwash / trip computer control stalk
3. Controls to select the multimedia source (**SRC**), manage music (**LIST**) and manage phone calls ("**telephone**" symbol)
4. Speed Limiter / Programmable Cruise Control / Adaptive cruise control controls
5. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
6. Voice control
   Volume adjustment
7. Audio system setting controls

Side switch panel



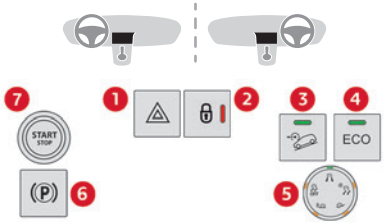
1. Manual headlamp beam height adjustment
2. DSC / ASR systems
3. Stop & Start
4. Parking sensors
5. Additional heating / ventilation
6. Active Lane Departure Warning System
7. Tyre under-inflation detection
8. Electric child lock
9. Heated windscreen
10. Head-up display

Control on the driver's door



Electric child lock

Central switch panel



1. Hazard warning lamps
2. Locking / unlocking from the inside
3. Hill Assist Descent
4. Eco mode
5. Advanced Grip Control
6. Electric parking brake
7. Starting / switching off the engine

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear efficiency indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear: whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These attitudes help to save fuel, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
If the vehicle has the steering-mounted "CRUISE" control, use cruise control at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Use electrical equipment wisely

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.) to help reduce consumption of electrical energy, and hence fuel.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

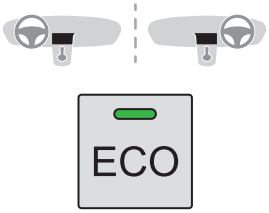
Comply with servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
– before a long journey.
– at each change of season.
– after a long period out of use.
Do not overlook the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle’s nitrogen oxide emissions to regulatory compliance.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third nozzle cut-out, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Eco mode

This mode optimises the heating and air conditioning functions to reduce fuel consumption.

Activation/Deactivation



► To activate or deactivate this mode, press this button.
The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is activated.

Eco-coaching

This function provides you with advice and information to help you adopt a more economical and environmentally friendly driving style.
It takes into account multiple parameters, including braking optimisation, acceleration management, gear changes, tyre inflation and use of the heating/air conditioning systems.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

By selecting the "**Eco-coaching**" tab of the central display in the matrix instrument panel, you can assess your driving in real time with the braking and acceleration indicator.

Information displayed on the touch screen

The four tabs - "**Trip**", "**Air conditioning**", "**Maintenance**" and "**Driving**" - provide tips to help you optimise your driving style.
Information relating to the driving style may also be displayed in real time.
The "**Report**" tab assesses your driving style on a daily basis and gives an overall score for the week.
You can reset this report at any time by pressing "**Reset**".

With CITROËN Connect Radio

► In the "**Applications**" menu, select "**Eco-coaching**".

With CITROËN Connect Nav

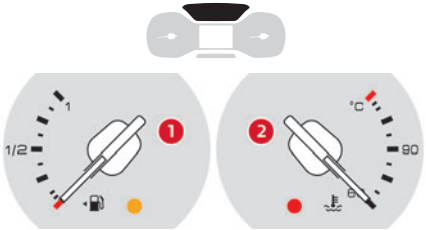
► In the "**Applications**" menu, then the "**Vehicle Apps**" tab, select "**Eco-coaching**".

Instrument panel

Speedometer

Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Indicators with LCD text or matrix instrument panel

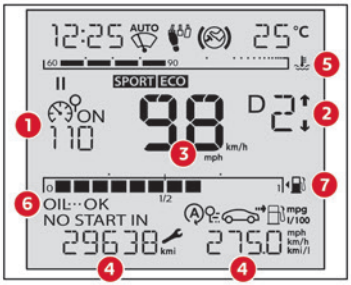


1. Fuel gauge.
2. Engine coolant temperature gauge.

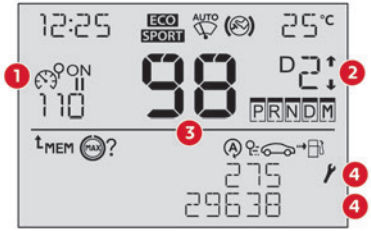
Display screen

i When travelling abroad, you may need to change the units of distance: the road speed must be displayed in the country's official unit (miles or km). The unit is changed via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

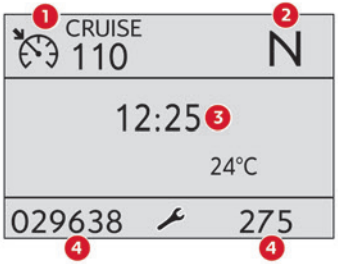
With LCD symbols instrument panel



With LCD text instrument panel



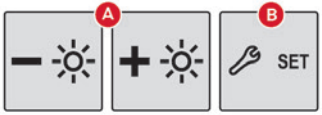
With matrix instrument panel



1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
2. Gear shift indicator.
   Gear with an automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h) with LCD symbols and LCD text instrument panel.
   Display area with matrix instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km) and trip distance recorder (miles or km).
   Display area with LCD text instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, etc.
5. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Fuel gauge.

Control buttons

With LCD symbols instrument panel

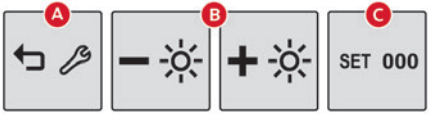


A. Lighting dimmer.
After a long press on **SET**: change the set time values and the units.

B. Reminder of servicing information or the driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip distance recorder).
After a long press: change the set time values and the units.

With LCD text instrument panel

With matrix instrument panel

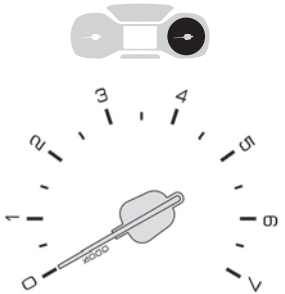


A. Temporary reminder of servicing information, or reminder of the driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level or cancel the current operation.

B. Lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: browse a menu or list, or change a value.

C. Reset the trip distance recorder (long press).
Reset the service indicator.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu and confirm a choice (short press).

Rev counter



Rev counter (x 1000 rpm).

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp continuously lit

The illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates the occurrence of a fault that needs further investigation.

If a warning lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.
(1): **You must stop the vehicle**.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

STOP Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Engine oil pressure

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Brakes

Fixed.
The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.
Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Parking brake

Fixed.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Maximum engine coolant temperature

Fixed (warning lamp or LED), with the needle in the red zone (depending on version).
The cooling system temperature is too high.
Carry out (1), then allow the engine to cool before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Battery charge

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).
Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Power steering

Fixed.
The power steering has a fault.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Seat belts not fastened / unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).

Door open

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.
An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
A door, the boot, the tailgate or the tailgate screen is still open (depending on version).
Close the access.
If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand hinged door, its opening will **not** be indicated by this warning lamp.

Electric parking brake

Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Automatic functions (with electric parking brake)

Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated.
Activate the functions again.

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The parking brake no longer delivers optimum performance for parking the vehicle safely in all circumstances.
Make the vehicle safe:
► Park on a level surface.
► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With an automatic gearbox, with **P** selected, place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Flashing, when the vehicle is started.
The parking brake has not been properly released.
Carry out (1) and try to fully release the parking brake using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal.
If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:
► Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.
If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:
► Park on a level surface.
► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With an automatic gearbox, select **P**, then place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.

If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically re-enabled in the event of a control lever fault.
Carry out (2).

Low fuel level

Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards zero.
When it first comes on there remains **less than 6 litres** of fuel in the tank.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.

Presence of water in diesel filter

Fixed (with LCD symbols instrument panel).
The diesel filter contains water.
Risk of damage to the injection system : carry out (2) without delay.

Engine self-diagnosis system

Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.
There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
Carry out (2) **without fail**.

Fixed.
The emission control system has a fault.
The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) quickly.

Fixed.
A minor engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (3).

STOP Fixed.
A major engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Diesel engine pre-heating

Fixed.
The period of illumination depends on the climatic conditions.
The ignition is on.
Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.
If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.

Under-inflation

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.
Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.
The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Flashing.
The system is operating.
The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Fixed.
The system has a fault.
If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).

Particle filter (Diesel)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.
The particle filter is beginning to saturate.
As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.
The minimum level of the additive reservoir has been reached.
Top up as soon as possible: carry out (3).

Airbags

Fixed.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is in the "**ON**" position.
In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - Risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag(OFF)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is in the "**OFF**" position.
You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)

OFF
Fixed.
The system is deactivated.
Press the button to reactivate it.
The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started, and from around 30 mph (50 km/h).

Flashing.
DSC/ASR regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Hill start assist

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Anti roll-back system fault".
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".
Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Fixed.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

Flashing indicator.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.
The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.

Fixed.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

AdBlue® (with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)

AdBlue
Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 370 miles (2,400 and 600 km).
You must quickly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

AdBlue
AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).

AdBlue
AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a

message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the regulatory engine immobiliser prevents the engine from being restarted.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2).
You **must** add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2/ 6.3)

AdBlue On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).
Top up the AdBlue®.

AdBlue Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

AdBlue Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).

AdBlue Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).
It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi)

AdBlue Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A malfunction involving the SCR emissions control system has been detected.
This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.

AdBlue Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
Depending on the message displayed, it may be possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.
Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

AdBlue Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of an emissions control system malfunction).
To start the engine, carry out (2).

Service

Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more minor faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel.
You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter.
For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.
Identify the cause of the anomaly using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the message 'Parking brake fault'.
Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).

Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Rear foglamp

Fixed.
The lamp is on.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Stop & Start

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

Hill Assist Descent Control

Fixed.
The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).

Flashing indicator.
The function is starting regulation.
The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.

Eco mode

ECO Fixed.
ECO mode is active.
Certain parameters are adjusted with a view to reducing fuel consumption.

Automatic wiping

AUTO Fixed.
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

Front foglamps

Fixed.
The front foglamps are lit.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Direction indicators

Direction indicators with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Automatic headlamp dipping

AUTO Fixed.
The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving** / **Vehicle** menu).
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Foot on brake

Fixed.
Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.
With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.

Foot on the clutch

Fixed.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.
Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Automatic wiping

AUTO Fixed.
Automatic front wiping is activated.

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed on the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:
– the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign “-”.
– an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

Service spanner

Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 1,800 miles (3,000 km) and 600 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.

Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The service is due in less than 600 miles (1,000 km).

Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

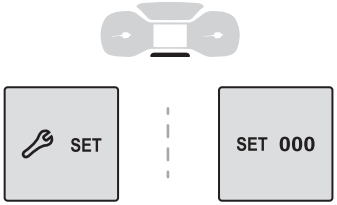
Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, combined with the Service warning lamp.)
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

> The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
> The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

► Switch off the ignition.



► Press and hold this button.

► Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.

► Release the button when **=0** is displayed; the spanner disappears.

> If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

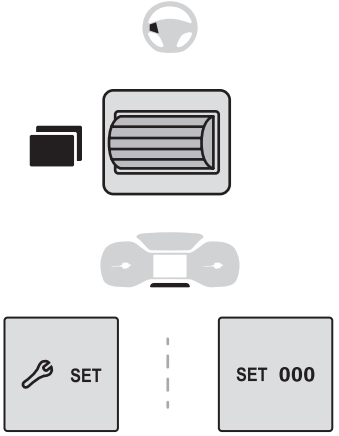
Service reminder

You can access service information at any time.

► Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Instrument panel display screen



With the vehicle stationary, use the left-hand thumbwheel on the steering wheel or the "**SET**" button on the instrument panel to move through the menus to configure certain vehicle settings.

Thumbwheel operation:

– Press: open the **Main menu**; confirm the selection.

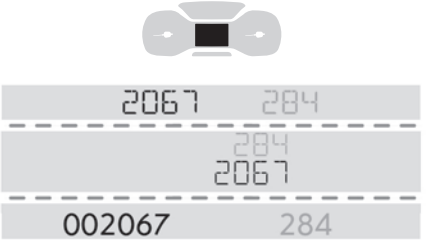
– Rotate (other than in a menu): scroll through the list of available active functions.

– Rotate (in a menu): move up or down in the menu.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder

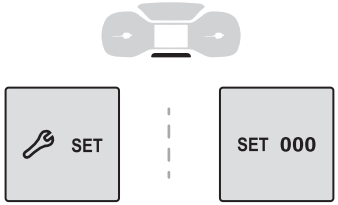


This recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

Trip distance recorder

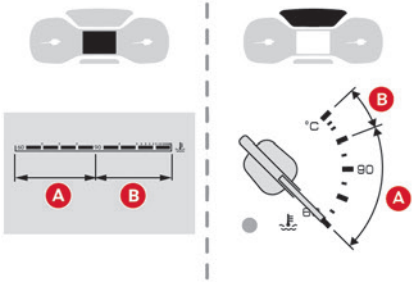
This recorder measures the distance travelled since it was last reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



► With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Engine coolant temperature



With the engine running, when the needle or bar graph (depending on version) is:

– in zone **A**, the engine coolant temperature is correct,

– in zone **B**, the engine coolant temperature is too high; the maximum temperature and central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

► wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,

► unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,

► when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,

► top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

Engine oil level indicator

On versions fitted with an electric oil gauge, the state of the engine oil level is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel.

Low oil level

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damaging the engine.

Oil level gauge fault

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

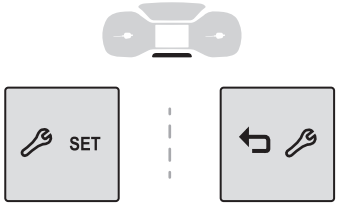
AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue®fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 miles and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of the range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



► Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).
Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 375 and 0 miles (600 and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (km)

With 1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2 / 6.3 engines

Warning lamps lit	Action	Remaining driving range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is essential**, due to the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and an "Emissions fault" or “NO START IN” message.

The alert is triggered while driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the cause of the fault persists.

> i If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.
The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, and an "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in X miles" or "NO START IN X miles" message is displayed, indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine immobiliser** system is triggered.

> ! Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

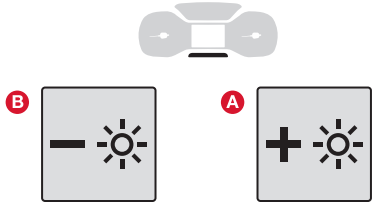
Starting prevented

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" or "NO START IN" message is displayed.

> ! To be able to restart the engine, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lighting dimmer

This control lets you manually adjust the brightness of the instrument panel according to the exterior light level.



With the lamps on (not in the AUTO position) , press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting, or button **B** to decrease it.
Release the button when the desired brightness is reached.

Touch screen lighting dimmer

► In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".

Or select "**OPTIONS**", "**Screen configuration**" then "**Brightness**".

► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

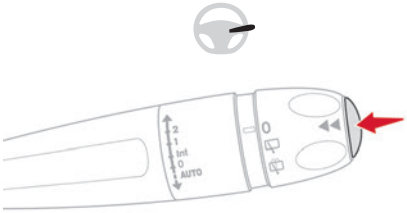
> The brightness can be set differently for day mode and night mode.

Trip computer

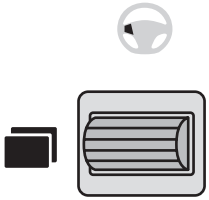
Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Information display

Details are displayed successively.
– Trip mileage.
– Range.
– Current fuel consumption.
– Average speed.
– Stop & Start time counter.
– Information from the speed limit recognition system.



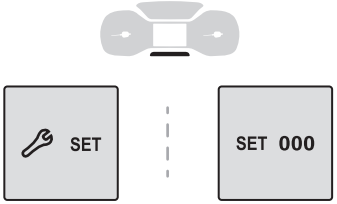
► Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.



► Or press the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Trip reset

The reset is performed when the trip counter is displayed.
► Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.
► Press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.



► Press this button for more than 2 seconds.

A few definitions…

Range

(miles or km)

Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in the driving style or terrain, resulting in a significant change in the spot fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Spot fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last **trip computer** reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

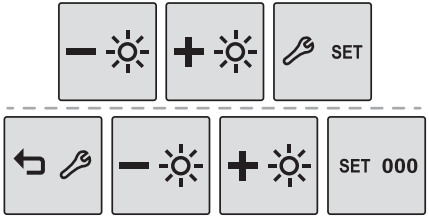
Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Setting the date and time

Without audio system



Set the date and time via the instrument panel display.

SET 000 ▶ Press and hold this button.

SET ▶ Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

SET 000 ▶ Briefly press this button to confirm.

SET ▶ Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to record the change.

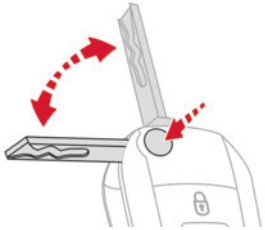
Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,

Remote control key

This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or remotely.
It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

> The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

Unfolding / Folding the key



► Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

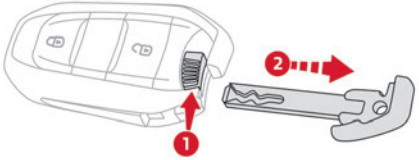
> The remote control may be damaged if you do not press the button.

Keyless Entry and Starting

This allows the remote central locking or unlocking of the vehicle.
It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Integral key

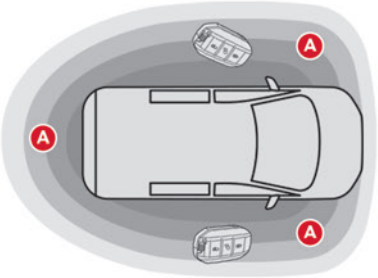
This is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the remote control cannot operate:
– remote control battery discharged, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
– vehicle located in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.



► Keep this button **1** pulled across to remove the key **2** from the device.

> If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.

"Keyless Entry and Starting" on your person



It allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the remote control on your person in the recognition zone "**A**".

> In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated and it is impossible to open the doors.
> For more information on **Starting/switching off the engine** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the corresponding section.

> If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will be disabled. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or tailgate are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after approximately 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

Automatic door mirror folding and unfolding can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Starting system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use.
To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with the **Keyless Entry and Starting** system, refer to the corresponding section.

Electrical interference
The electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:
– The direction indicators flash for approximately 10 seconds.
– The courtesy lamps come on.

► Press this button.

Remote lighting

Briefly pressing this button switches on the lighting remotely (sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).
Pressing this button again before the end of the timed period cancels remote lighting.

Advice

Remote control
The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.

Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

Anti-theft protection
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Unlocking

i Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

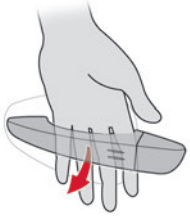
With the key

► To **completely** unlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the front of the vehicle.
► Then pull the handle to open the door.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Using the remote control

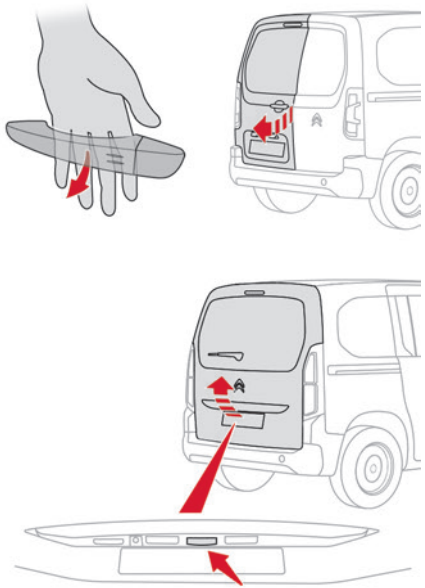
► Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting "on your person"



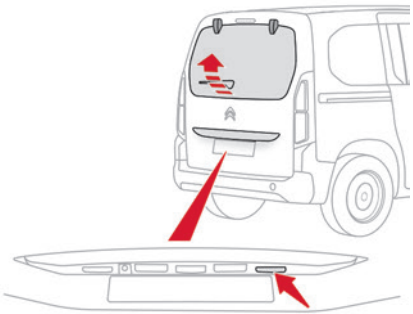
► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, run your hand behind one of the door handles (front doors).
► Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

With side-hinged doors/tailgate



► To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A, pass** your hand behind the side-hinged door handle or press the tailgate unlocking control.
► Pull the side-hinged door handle or raise the tailgate.

With a tailgate opening rear screen



► With the Keyless Entry and Starting device on your person, to unlock the vehicle, press the tailgate opening rear screen unlocking control. The screen partly opens; raise it to open it fully.

Locking

! Ensure that no person or object prevents the correct closing of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, the locking/deadlocking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

With the key

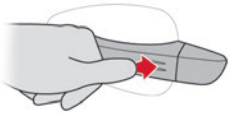
► To lock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the rear of the vehicle.

With the remote control

► To lock the vehicle, press this button.

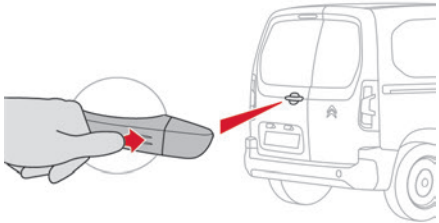
i If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding this button closes the windows. The window stops in position when you release the button.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting "on your person"



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on the markings of one of the front or rear door handles.

With side-hinged doors



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door locking control.

i If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, pressing and holding the locking button enables the windows to be closed. The window stops in position when you release the button.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the remote control with you.

If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):
– when the vehicle is stationary and engine running, this warning lamp comes on,

accompanied by a warning message for a few seconds,
– when the vehicle is moving (at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message for a few seconds.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the key

► To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle.
► Then **within five seconds**, turn the key towards the rear again.

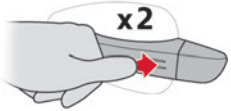
With the remote control

► To deadlock the vehicle, press this button.
► Then press this button again **within five seconds after locking**.

i At the same time, depending on version, the electric door mirrors fold in.

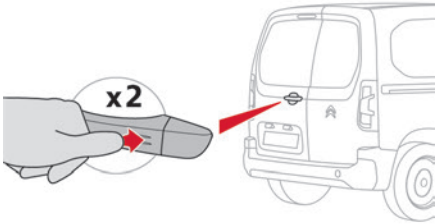
i If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, pressing and holding the locking button enables the windows to be closed. The window stops in position when you release the button.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press on the markings of one of the front or rear door handles.
► To deadlock the vehicle, press the marking again **within five seconds.**

With side-hinged doors



► To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door locking control.

► To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:
– Remote control battery discharged.
– Remote control malfunction.
– Vehicle battery discharged.
– Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.
In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.
► Insert the key in the door lock.
► Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.

► Turn the key rearwards again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

i If the vehicle is unlocked with the key in the lock **after locking it with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system**, **all doors and the boot** are unlocked.
If the vehicle is unlocked with the key in the lock **after locking it with the key**, only the doors (front door and sliding side door(s)) are unlocked. The swing doors and tailgate are not unlocked. They can be unlocked after switching on the ignition.

Central locking not functioning

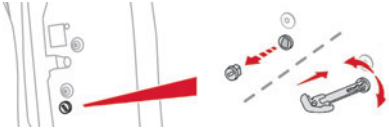
Use these procedures in the following cases:
– Central locking malfunction.
– Battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

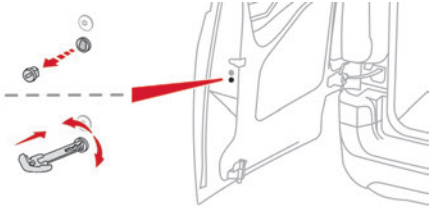
Locking part of the vehicle (front passenger door/sliding side door/ side-hinged doors)

► With a **sliding side door** or **side-hinged doors**, if fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not activated.
► Open the door.

Front passenger door



Sliding side door



Side-hinged doors

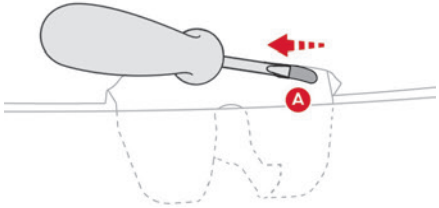
► Remove the cap located on the edge of the door.
► Insert the integral key into the latch (without forcing) and then **turn** the assembly.
► Remove the key and refit the cap.
► Close the door(s) and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked correctly.

Unlocking of one part of the vehicle (front passenger door/sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

► Use the interior opening handle.
or
► With **side-hinged doors**, insert the integral key in the (left-hand) door lock, then turn it.

i For more information on the **Child lock** on a **sliding side door** or **side-hinged doors**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the tailgate



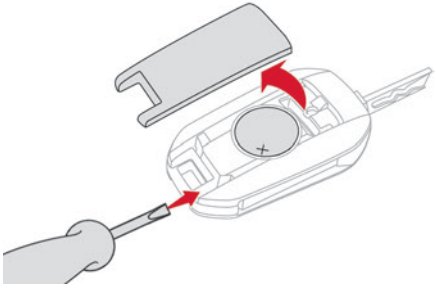
► From inside the vehicle, insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** on the lock to unlock the tailgate.
► Move the latch to the left.

! In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

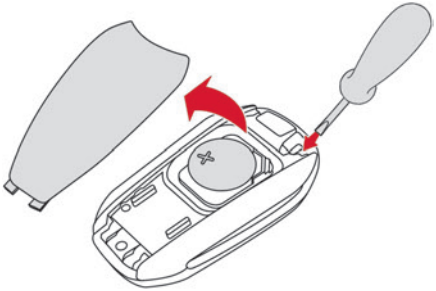
Changing the battery

If the battery is discharged, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an onscreen message.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting – Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.



With Keyless Entry and Starting – Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.



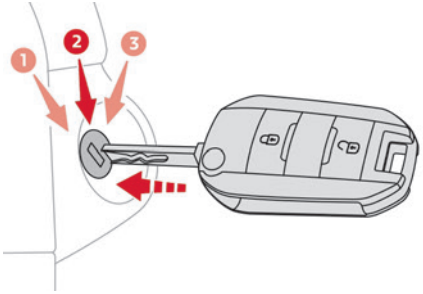
► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.
► Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
► Insert the new battery, observing the polarity, and clip the cover onto the housing.
► Reinitialise the remote control.
For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw used remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

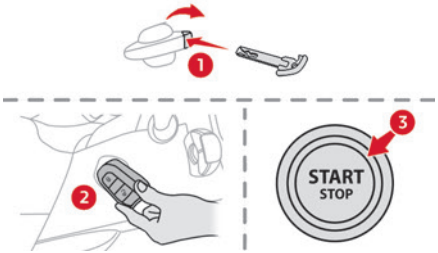
Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting



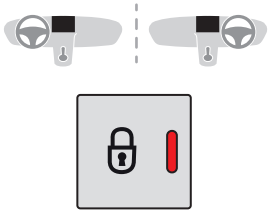
► Switch off the ignition.
► Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
► Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.
The remote control is now fully operational again.



► Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
► Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
► Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
► **With a manual gearbox,** place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox,** while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking / unlocking

This function enables the doors to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.



When locking/deadlocking from the outside
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is inoperative.
► After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
► After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Manual mode

► Press this button to lock / unlock the vehicle.

Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not function.

This is signalled by a mechanical noise from the locks.
If the boot is open, only the locking of the other doors is carried out. The indicator lamp in the button remains off.

When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more accesses.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.
For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the

instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Activation/Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

► With the ignition on, press the central locking button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

! Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior difficult in an emergency.

i **Carrying long or voluminous objects**

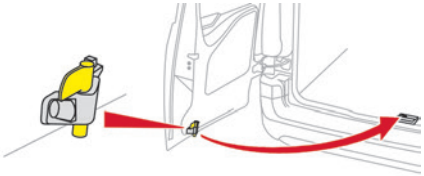
If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Side-hinged doors

Keeping the left-hand door closed with the right-hand door open



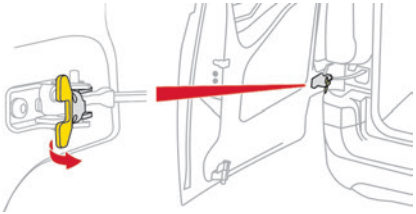
i It is possible to drive with the right-hand door open, to enable the transportation of long loads.

The **left-hand** door is kept closed by the distinctive "yellow" lock, positioned at the base of the door.

This closed door must not be used to retain loads.

Driving with the right-hand door open is a special dispensation. Please comply with the usual safety instructions on how to warn other drivers.

Opening to approximately 180°



If fitted to your vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

► Pull the yellow control when the door is open.

The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.

General recommendations for the sliding side doors

! Doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.

For your safety and that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open.

Always check that it is safe to operate the door and in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.

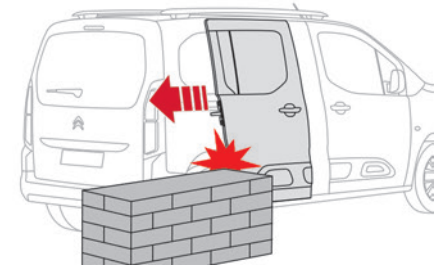
An audible warning, "door open" warning lamp and onscreen message are there to remind you. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if you want to deactivate this warning.
Lock the vehicle when you use an automatic car wash.

! Before opening or closing and while moving doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the door frame or any other position that would block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle.
If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

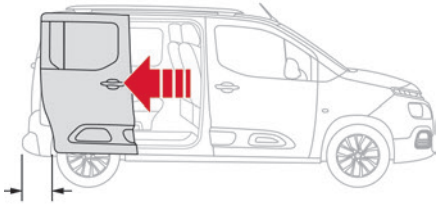
! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor, to allow the door to slide correctly.
For safety and functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the latch (located at the bottom of the door).

Doors and door clearances

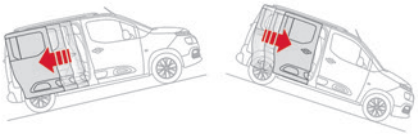


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Allow adequate clearance when parking alongside walls, lamp-posts, high pavements, etc.



i When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

On a steep slope



Take care when opening doors while the vehicle is on a slope facing uphill. The sloping terrain could cause the door to open more quickly than usual.
On a steep slope, manually guide the side door to help it to close.
If the vehicle is on a slope facing downhill, the door may not stay open, instead closing **suddenly**, with a risk of injury. Always hold the door to ensure that it does not close unexpectedly.

! On a steep slope, the door's weight may cause it to move, opening or closing **suddenly** as a result.
Avoid leaving the vehicle unsupervised on a steep slope with one or more doors open. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

Alarm

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Self-protection function
The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.
For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Exterior perimeter

The system checks whether the vehicle is opened.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open one of the doors or the bonnet.

Volumetric

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

If your vehicle is fitted with Additional Heating / Ventilation, volumetric monitoring is not compatible with this system.
For more information on **Additional Heating / Ventilation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

► Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.
► Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
The monitoring system is active: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not closed properly, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

► Press the unlocking button on the remote control.
or
► Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Disable volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted alarm triggering in certain cases, such as:
– Slightly open window or sunroof.
– Washing the vehicle.
– Changing a wheel.
– Towing your vehicle.
– Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
► Get out of the vehicle.
► Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

i To be taken into account, the deactivation must be carried out every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
► Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:
► unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
► open the door; the alarm is triggered,
► switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

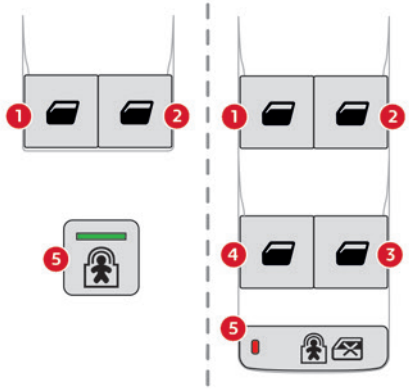
Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

(Depending on the country of sale)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.
► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the “Keyless Entry and Starting” system.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear (depending on version)
4. Left-hand rear (depending on version)
5. Deactivation of the electric window controls located by the rear seats (depending on version)

Manual operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

(Depending on version)

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

> Window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.
> After that time, the controls are disabled.
> To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

Anti-pinch

(Depending on version)

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows

For your children's safety, press control **5** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on and a confirmation message is displayed.
The lamp will remain lit until the controls are reactivated.
The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

► Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.

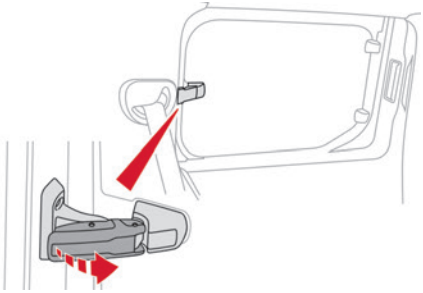
► Continue to pull the control upwards for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

> If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant switch.
> When the driver operates the passengers' electric window switches, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
> It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows using the key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Tilting rear door windows

Opening



► Turn the lever outwards.
► Push it fully to secure the window in the open position.

Closing

► Pull the lever to release the window.
► Turn the lever fully inwards to secure the window in the closed position.

General recommendations for the seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the backrests forming a table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
– Do not remove a head restraint without stowing it; secure it to a support inside the vehicle.
– Check that the seat belts remain accessible to the passenger and easy to fasten.
– Passengers must never take their seat without adjusting and fastening their seat belt.
– In row 3, be careful not to leave your feet under the row 2 seat while it is being tilted.
– When a row 3 seat is in the fully folded position, ensure that the strap is correctly hooked to the Top Tether fixing of the row 2 backrest: risk of unexpected tipping of the seat.

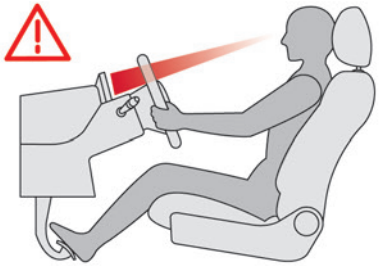
! Before carrying out the manoeuvres, check that nothing and no one is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.
To avoid sudden folding, take care to hold the backrest and support it until it is horizontal.
Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped.
Place your hand on the grip/strap (depending on equipment) at the top of the seat cushion.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - risk of severe injury!

Front seats

Correct driving position

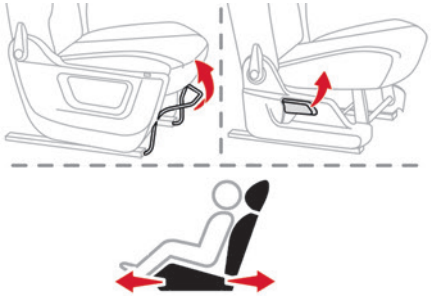
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:
– head restraint height.
– seat backrest angle.
– seat cushion height.
– longitudinal seat position.
– steering wheel height and reach.
– rear view mirror and door mirrors.



! Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Adjustments

Longitudinal



► Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

(driver only)

► If the vehicle is so equipped, pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

> i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tilting the backrest

► Push the control backwards then use your weight and your legs to adjust the backrest.

Lumbar

(driver only)

► Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Armrest

► To put the armrest in the vertical position, raise it until it locks into place.
► Lower the armrest to return it to the position for use.
The armrest can be removed from the passenger seat.

Removing the armrest

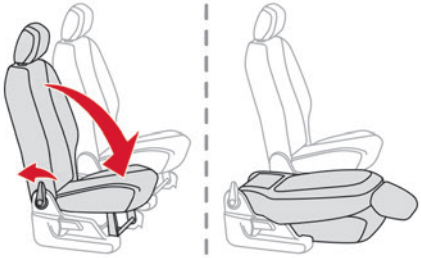
► Raise the armrest into the vertical position.

► Push the armrest shaft towards the backrest.
► While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the rear.
► Pull the armrest to detach it from the backrest.

Refitting the armrest

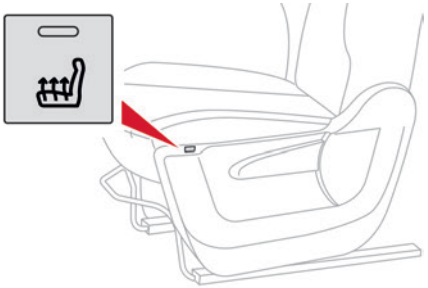
► Slot the armrest into the backrest, ensuring that you align the bayonet lugs with the holes.
► Push the armrest shaft towards the backrest.
► While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the front. The armrest is once again secured onto the backrest.

Retractable position



► If the centre console inconveniences you, remove the passenger's seat armrest.
► Push the control rearwards fully to tilt and guide the assembly.
This position allows you to transport long loads inside the vehicle with the doors closed.
When retracted, the maximum permitted weight on the backrest is 50 kg.
► To reposition the seat cushion, raise the backrest until it locks in the raised position.

Heated seat control



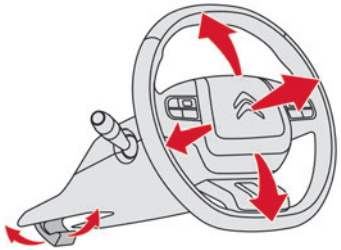
► Approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine, press the control.
The temperature is controlled automatically.
Pressing again interrupts operation.

i If you press the control while the engine is not running, the request will be memorised for approximately 2 minutes.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electricity consumption in turn decreases fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use of the heated seats is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
– do not place sharp or heavy objects on the seat,
– do not kneel or stand on the seat,
– do not spill liquids onto the seat,
– never use the heating function if the seat is wet.

Steering wheel adjustment



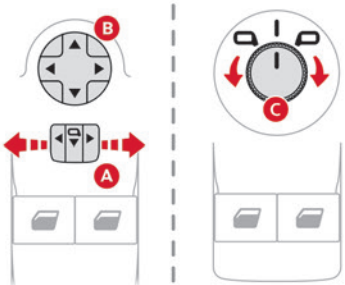
► **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
► Adjust the height and reach.
► Lower the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Adjustment



► Move control **A** or turn control **C** (depending on the version you have) to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
► Move control **B** or **C** (depending on the version you have) in any of the four directions to adjust.
► Return control **A** or **C** (depending on the version you have) to its centre position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.
The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)
► Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

If the vehicle is so equipped, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:

► Place control **A** in the centre position.
► Pull control **A** back.

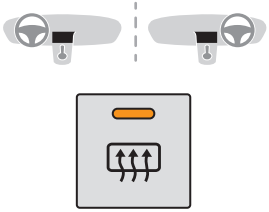
► Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Electric unfolding

The electric unfolding of the mirrors is via the remote control or the key when unlocking the vehicle. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control back again to the central position.

i The folding / unfolding on locking / unlocking can be deactivated. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Heated mirrors



► Press this button.

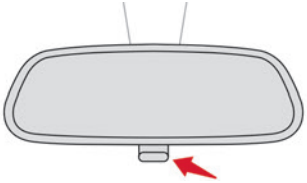
> i For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position



► Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
► Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

► Set the mirror to the normal “day” position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and gradually transitions between day and night use, with the aid of a sensor that measures the light arriving from the rear of the vehicle.

> i To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Child-monitoring mirror

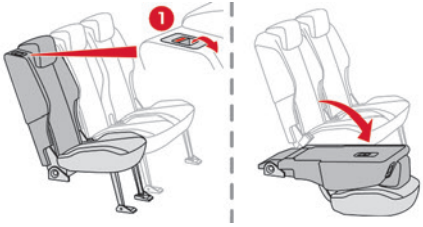
A child-monitoring mirror is installed above the interior rear view mirror. It allows the vehicle's rear passengers to be observed and facilitates discussion between the front and rear passengers without changing the mirror setting and without turning around. It can be folded easily to avoid dazzle.

Rear bench seat (row 2)

Folding the backrests

First steps:
► lower the head restraints,
► if necessary, move the front seats forward,
► check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
► check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

> i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion.
> When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.



► Turn the backrest release handle **1**.

► Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

► Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the red indicator in the release grip **1** is no longer visible.
► Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

Rear seats (row 2)

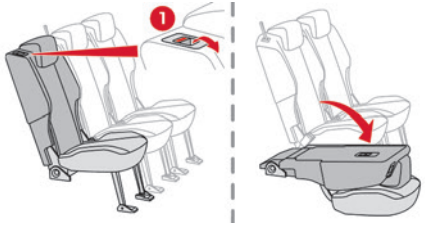
Folding the backrests

First steps:
► lower the head restraints,
► if necessary, move the front seats forward,
► check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
► check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion.
When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.

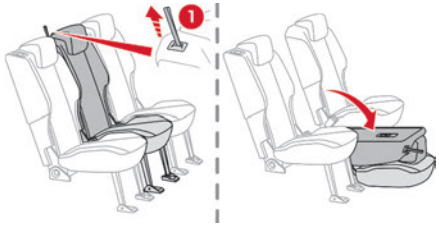
Folding from the passenger compartment

Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)



► Turn the backrest release handle **1**.
► Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

Central seat

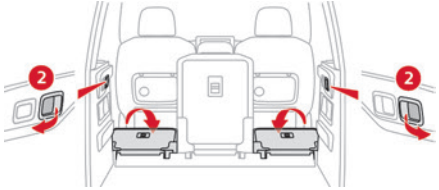


► Pull the backrest release tab **1**.
► Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

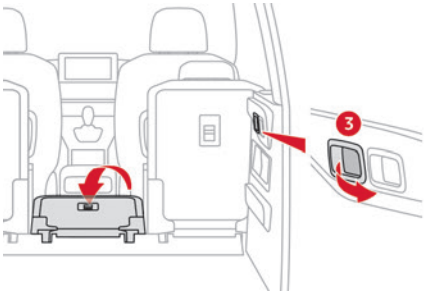
! With the central seat, only the strap must be used.

Folding from the boot

Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)



Central seat



► Pull the backrest release paddle **2** or **3** towards you.
The backrest folds fully onto the cushion.

Repositioning the backrests

Outer seat (left-hand or right-hand)

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

► Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the red indicator on the release grips **1** of the outer seats is no longer visible.
► Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

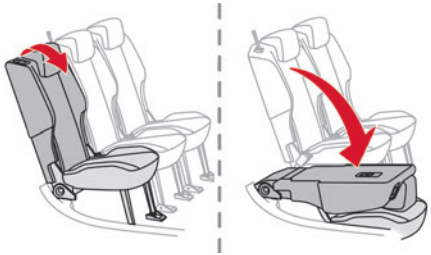
! Check that the backrest of the upright central seat is correctly aligned with the backrests of the outer seats.

Central seat

► Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
► Check that the central seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.

Rear seats (row 3)

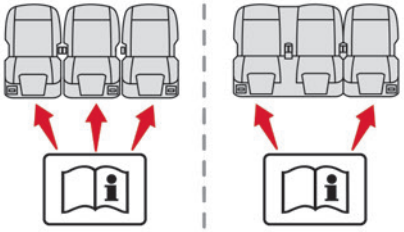
Access to row 3



► Using the row 2 seat grip, fold the backrest.
► To reposition it, tilt the backrest backwards until it locks into place.

Labels in row 3

While driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger seated next to a seat in the fully folded position.



If you want to load luggage onto the row 3 backrests while in the table position, the row 2 seats must also be folded down.

Longitudinal adjustment

XL

► Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Table position

Placing the backrest in the table position

► Lower the head restraint as far as it will go.

► Operate control **1** to fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.

Repositioning the backrest

► Unlock it by pulling control **1**.

► Return it to its initial position

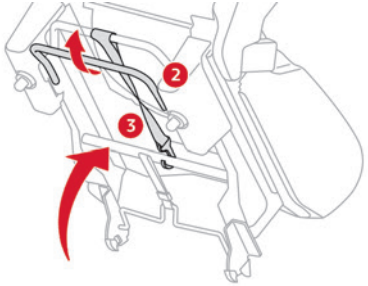
► Check that the assembly is anchored properly.

Fully folded position

XL

Placing the seat in the fully folded position

► Place the backrest in the table position.



► Lift the bar **2**, located behind the seat, to release the feet of the seat from their anchorage in the floor.

► Tilt the entire seat forwards.

► Hook the strap **3** on the row 2 head restraint rod.

Returning the seat to the sitting position

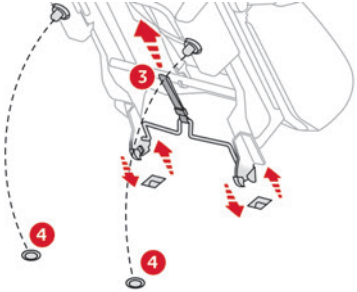
► Fold the entire seat backwards.

► Check that the seat belt is not trapped during the manoeuvre.

Removing the seat

► Lower the head restraint as far as it will go.

► Place the seat in the fully folded position.



► Pull on the strap **3** to open the seat anchorages.

► While still holding the strap **3**, lift the seat.

Refitting the seat

► Pull on the strap **3** to open the seat anchorages.

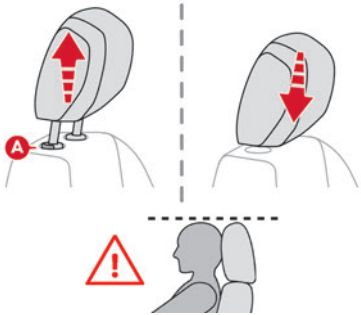
► While still holding the strap **3**, place them in the anchorage points on the floor.

► Release the strap **3**.

► Ensure that no object or feet are obstructing the rear anchorage points **4** and that the seat belt is correctly positioned and available.

► Fold the seat backwards to fix its rear anchorage feet.
► Use the control **1** to lift the backrest to its original position.
► Raise the head restraint.

Head restraint height adjustment



► To raise it, pull it upwards as far as possible (notch).
► To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull it upwards.
► To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
► To lower it, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

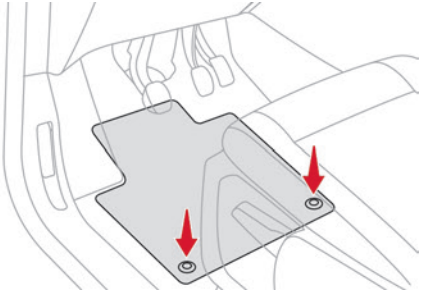
! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed or not in the high position; the head restraints must be in place and in the high position.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior fittings

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fasteners supplied in the enclosed sachet.
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

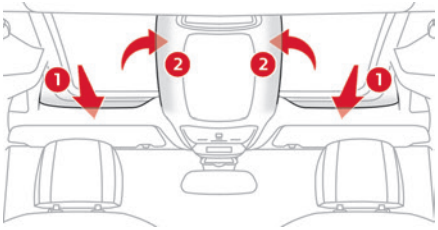
► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
► To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing.
► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats which are suitable for the fasteners already present in the vehicle; these fasteners must be used.

– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Roof and roof storage

Overhead storage compartment and central storage compartment

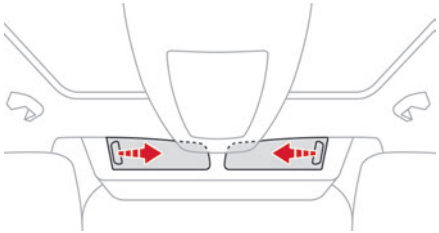


The overhead storage compartment **(1)** is located above the sun visors and can be used to store miscellaneous objects.
There is a storage space **(2)** located in the roof lining.
The maximum permitted load is 6 kg.

! In the event of sharp deceleration, objects placed in the central storage compartment of the roof may be transformed into projectiles.

Rear storage compartment

This compartment is accessible from the rear seats and from the vehicle's boot.
It has a capacity of 60 litres and the maximum permitted load is 10 kg.



► To open it from the rear seats, slide the rear storage compartment shutters.

► To open it from the vehicle's boot, place your thumb on the boot recess then pull the handle.

! Open the rear storage compartment with care, to prevent any objects stored inside from falling out.

Light ambience

The light ambience can be configured from the vehicle's configuration menu.

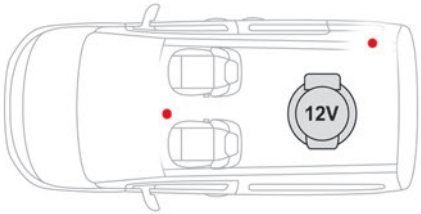
Blind

Opening/Closing

► Press and hold the button; the blind opens/ closes, stopping when the button is released.

! If the blind becomes trapped while moving, reverse its movement. To do this, press the relevant switch.
When pressing the button to open/close the blind, the driver must ensure that nothing and no one might interfere with its movement.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

12 V accessory socket(s)

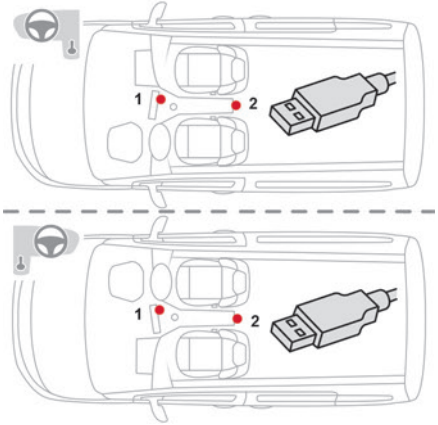


► Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB port(s)

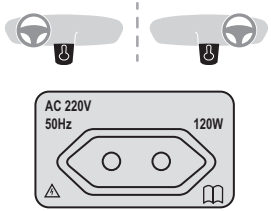


Ports **1** and **2** can be used to charge a portable device.
Port **1** also enables audio files sent to your audio system to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.
A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section .

Port **1** also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.
For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering mounted controls or the audio system controls.

220 V/50 Hz socket



It is located on the side of the central storage compartment.
This socket (max. power: 150 W) operates with the engine running, and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
► Lift the protective cover.
► Check that the green indicator lamp is on.
► Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).
In the event of a malfunction, the green indicator lamp flashes.
Have the socket checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (do not use extension leads or multi-socket adapters).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
Do not use metal-cased devices (e.g. electric shaver, etc.).

i As a safety measure, if power consumption is high and power is required by the vehicle's electrical system (due to severe weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), power to the socket may be cut off, in which case the green indicator lamp goes off.

Wireless smartphone charger

It allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With Keyless Entry and Starting, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

! Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged, due to the risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process.

Operating check

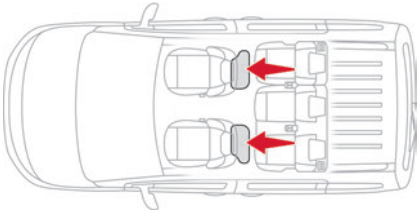
The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging finished.
Fixed green	Compatible device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Fault with the device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator lamp is lit orange:
– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.
or
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

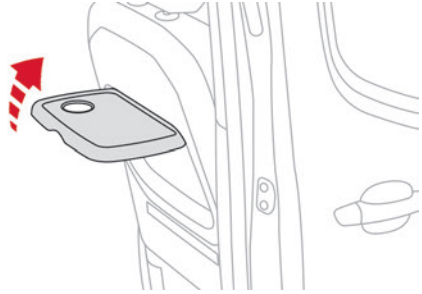
Floor boxes



There are two boxes located under the rear passenger footwells.

► To open them, slide your fingers into the notch and lift the cover.

Aircraft style tables



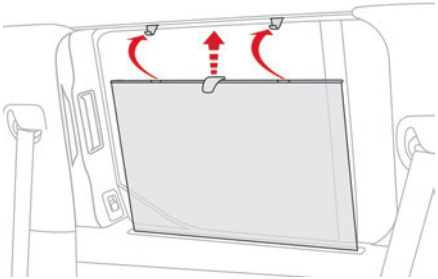
► To put the table back in place, pull it upwards. As a safety precaution, the aircraft style table unhooks itself if excessive pressure is applied.

► To store the table, pull it downwards.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. Such objects could become projectiles in the event of sudden deceleration.

Side blinds

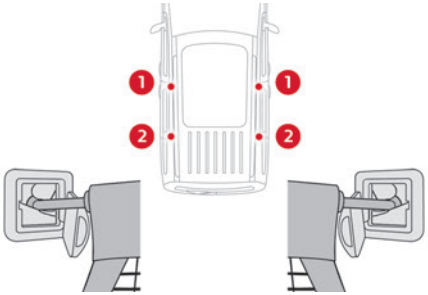
They are fitted to the windows of the sliding side doors (depending on version).



► To raise or lower the blind, pull it by the tab.

i To avoid damaging the blind:
– Guide it slowly, using the tab, while raising or lowering it.
– Make sure the tab is securely fastened before opening the door.

High load retaining net

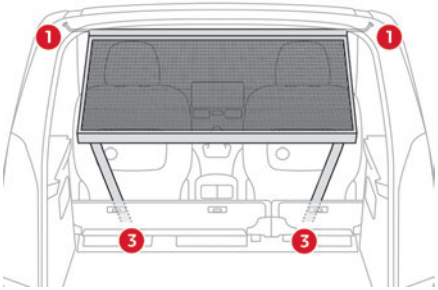


This net, hooked onto the upper mountings and the lower rings or lugs, enables the use of the full loading volume, up to the roof:
– Behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.
– Behind the rear seats (row 2).

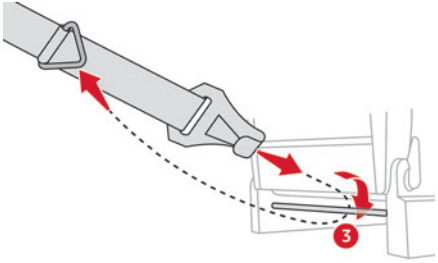
i When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening them easier.

! Remove the luggage cover shelf or roller (depending on version).

Installation behind row 1

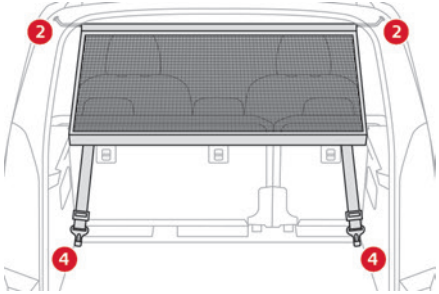


► Open the covers on the upper mountings **1**.
► Unroll the high load retaining net.
► Position one end of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper mounting **1**, then do the same with the other end.
► Fully extend the straps.



► Wind each strap around bar **3** located under the front seat cushion (row 1), then secure each spring hook to the ring on the corresponding strap.
► Fold down the rear seats.
► Tighten the straps without raising the bench seat.
► Check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

Installation behind row 2



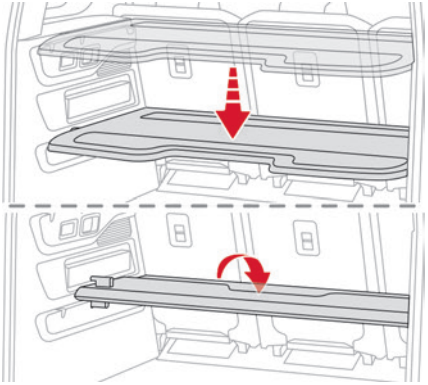
► Fold or remove the luggage cover.
► Open the covers on the upper mountings **2**.
► Unroll the high load retaining net.
► Position one end of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper mounting **2**, then do the same with the other end.
► Attach the hook on each of the net's straps to the corresponding stowing ring **4** (located on the floor).
► Tighten the straps.
► Check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring, which is for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

Two-position luggage cover shelf (removable)

M

M



It can be installed in two different positions: high and low.
It consists of two sections which can be folded back on each other.
► To fold it from the boot, grasp it and fold it back on itself up to the rear seats. From the

low position, you can store it folded by sliding it towards the backrests of the rear seats.
► To deploy it from the boot, grasp it and unfold it to the boot pillars.

> i The maximum authorised weight on the luggage cover shelf is 25 kg.

Luggage cover

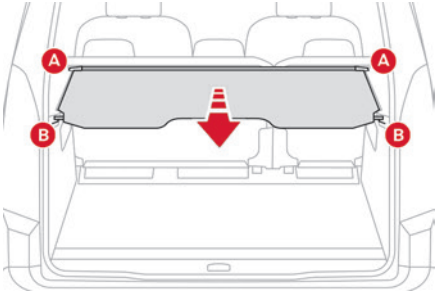
XL

XL

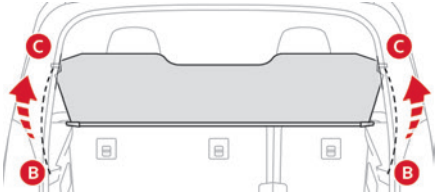
In the 5-seat configuration, it is installed behind the second row seats, with the third row seats stored folded away.
In the 7-seat configuration, it is stored behind the third row seats.

> ! In the event of sudden deceleration, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

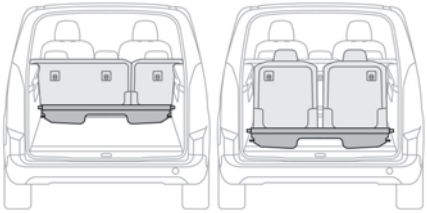
Installation



► Position the left and right ends of the roller in the cut-outs **A**.
► Pull out the roller until it reaches the boot pillars.
► Insert the roller guides into the rails in the pillars **B**.



► Depending on version, you can access the boot by opening the rear screen in the tailgate and attaching the roller guides into the rails in the pillars **C**.

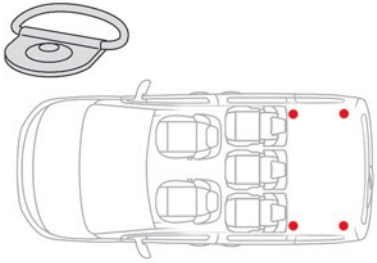


► The roller can be stored behind row **2** or **3**.

Removal

► Remove the roller guides from the rails in pillars **B**.
► Guide the roller as it reels in.
► Unlock the roller by pressing one of the handles located at the ends of the roller bracket.

Stowing rings



Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to secure loads.

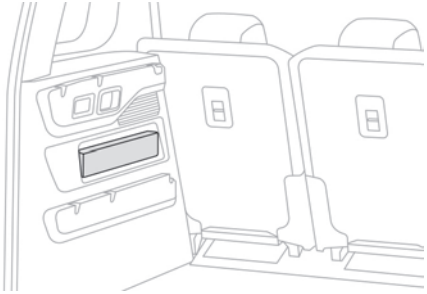
As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, we recommend placing heavy objects as far forwards as possible (i.e. near the cab).
We recommend using the stowing rings on the floor to firmly secure the load.

! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, always switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the boot in which to store a warning triangle.

Heating and Ventilation

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

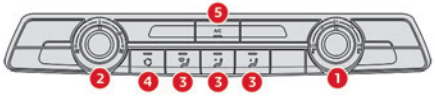
► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, this type of filter helps to purify the air breathed by the occupants and keep the passenger compartment clean (by reducing allergic symptoms, unpleasant odours and greasy deposits).
► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

Stop & Start
The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information on the **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Interior air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Air flow

► Turn the thumbwheel **2** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

If you set the air flow control to the **minimum** position (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** from "**LO**" (cold) to "**HI**" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

Air distribution

Windscreen and side windows.

Central and side air vents.

Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– enhance the effectiveness of the demisting function in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

► Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then restore the intake of exterior air.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, misting).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort mode.

7. Visibility programme.
8. "Mono" function.

Automatic comfort mode

► Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to toggle the mode.
The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

AUTO SOFT	Ensures soft, quiet operation by limiting air flow.
AUTO	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
FAST AUTO	Provides dynamic, effective air flow.

i When the engine is cold, the air flow will only increase to its optimum level gradually, to avoid distributing too much cold air.
In cold weather, it prioritises the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that suggested by the system, by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.
The "**AUTO**" symbol disappears if you change a setting.

Deactivating the system

► Press button **2** "**-**" until the fan symbol disappears.
This disables all functions of the dual-zone automatic air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.
► Press button **2** "**+**" to switch the system on again.

Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their preferences.
The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
► Push button **1** down to decrease the value or up to increase it.

i A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
In addition, we recommend avoiding left/right setting differences of more than 3.

i On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is significantly colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort.
The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.
► Push button **1** down until **"LO"** is displayed or up until **"HI"** is displayed.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).
► Press the corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on when the function is activated.
The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

Visibility programme

► Press the "**visibility**" button **7** to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
► Press the "**visibility**" button **8** again to stop the programme.
Or

► Press the “**AUTO**” button **6** to return to the automatic comfort programme.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– enhance the effectiveness of the demisting function in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

► Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then restore the intake of exterior air.

ℹ The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

! Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, misting).

Air distribution

► Pressing button **3** successively directs the air flow towards:
– windscreen, side windows and footwells,
– footwells,
– central vents, side vents and footwells,
– windscreen, side windows, central vents, side vents and footwells,
– central and side vents,
– windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air flow

► Press the buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.
The air flow symbol (a fan) appears. It is filled in or emptied gradually, according to the value set.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windscreen and side windows.
Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

ℹ When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

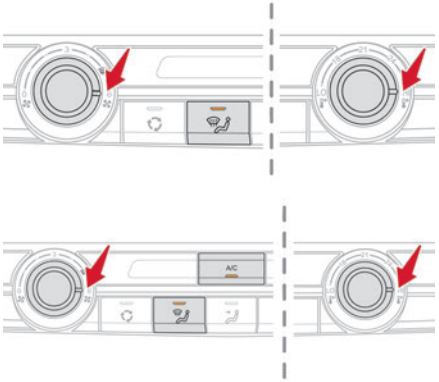
► Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air or allow the intake of exterior air.

! Avoid prolonged use of interior air recirculation (due to the risk of misting and deteriorating air quality).

Front demisting - defrosting

These markings on the control panel indicate the positioning of the controls for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

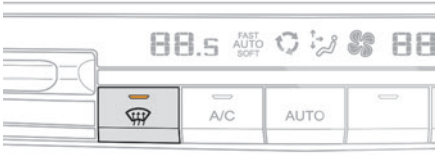
Heating or manual air conditioning



► Set the air flow, temperature and air distribution controls to the appropriately marked positions.

► For air conditioning, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



► Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

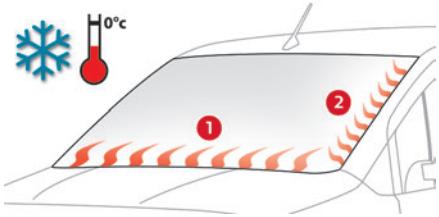
AUTO ► To turn it off, press this button again or press "**AUTO**".
The system restarts with the values in use before it was deactivated.

Heated windscreen and washer jets
For more information on the **Wiper control stalk** and in particular the heated windscreen and washer jets, refer to the corresponding section.

With Stop & Start, when demisting - defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Heated windscreen

Depending on country of sale.
This function heats the windscreen in cold weather.

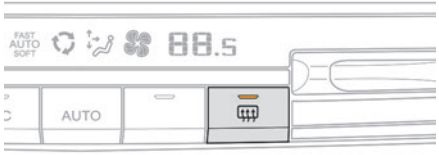


In area **1**, the heating melts ice, enabling you to free the wiper blades.
In area **2**, the heating enhances visibility by preventing the build-up of snow while the wipers are operating.

On/Off

► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).
The period of operation depends on the exterior temperature.

Rear screen demisting - defrosting



On/Off

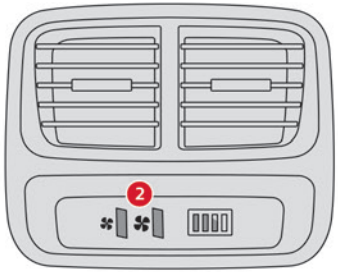
► Press this button to switch on/off rear screen and door mirror defrosting (if fitted to the vehicle).

Switch off the rear screen and door mirror defrosting function as soon as possible, as decreasing electrical

consumption in turn reduces fuel consumption.

ℹ Rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate with the engine is running.

Rear heating and air conditioning

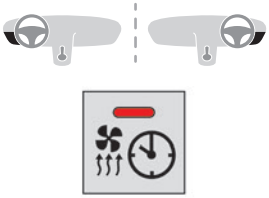


If your vehicle is so equipped, the temperature of the air distributed by the system is the same as the selection for the front.

Air flow

► Press one of the buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.

Additional heating/ ventilation system



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.

This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.
It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

With Bluetooth® audio system

► Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.
► Select "**Pre-heat. / Pre-ventil.**".
► Select "**Activation**" and, if necessary, for programming, **"Parameters"**.
► Select "**Heating**" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Select:
- the first clock to set/save the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,
- the second clock to set/save a second time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,

ℹ Using these two clocks and depending on the season you can, for example, select one or the other start time.
A message on the screen confirms your choice.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Then press "**Programmable heating/ ventilation**".

► Select the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

► Select the "**Other settings**" tab to choose the "**Heating**" mode, to heat the engine and passenger compartment, or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Then set/save the time at which the preheating temperature will be reached for each selection.

Press this button to save.

With CITROËN Connect Nav

► Press the "**Applications**" menu.

► Press the "**Vehicle Apps**" tab.

► Press "**Temperature programming**".

► Press the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.

► Press the "**Parameters**" tab to select "**Heating**" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" mode to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Then set/save the activation time for each selection.

► Press "**OK**" to confirm.

You must allow at least 60 minutes between programming operations.

Long range remote control

(Depending on version.)
This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.
The remote control has a range of about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.

On

► Pressing and holding this button starts the heating immediately (confirmed by the green indicator lamp coming on briefly).

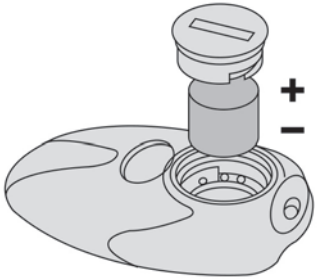
Off

OFF ► Pressing and holding this button stops the heating immediately (confirmed by the red indicator lamp coming on briefly).

The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal, in which case you should move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

The indicator lamp in the remote control will change to orange if the battery charge is low.
If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



► Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged.
The heating is activated provided that:

– the battery charge and the fuel level are sufficient,
– the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle,
– 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.

! The programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to program the heating. The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

! To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

! Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

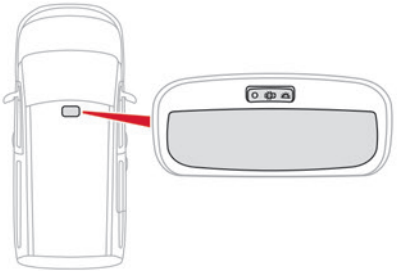
Courtesy lamp

Automatic switching on/off

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
All courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and when locating the vehicle using the remote control.
They fade to off after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.

! Take care not to allow objects to come into contact with the courtesy lamp.

Type 1

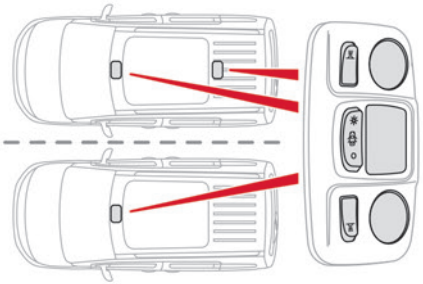


Always lit, ignition on.

Lights up when one of the front or rear doors is opened.

Always off.

Type 2



Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

Always lit, ignition on.

Row 2: comes on when one of the rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

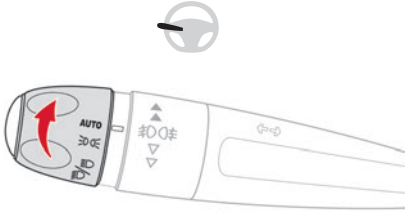
Always off.

Individual reading lamp

If fitted to the vehicle, these are switched on and off by means of a manual switch. With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Lighting control stalk

Main lighting



AUTO Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps

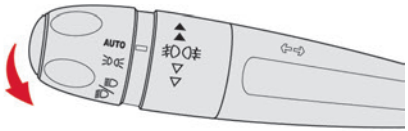
Sidelamps only

Dipped or main beam headlamps

Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Headlamp dipping



Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.
In "**AUTO**" and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Foglamps selection ring

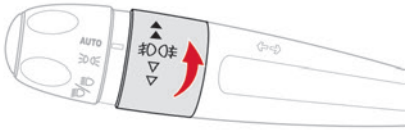
Rear foglamps

They operate with the sidelamps on.

► Rotate the ring forwards to switch them on and backwards to switch them off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position), the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

With front and rear foglamps



They operate with the dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.
Turn and release the ring:
► once forwards to switch on the front foglamps and then a second time for the rear foglamps.
► once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps and then a second time for the front foglamps.
If the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps will remain on.
► Turn the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

When the lighting is left on
An audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that the vehicle's exterior lighting is on, with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode.
In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.

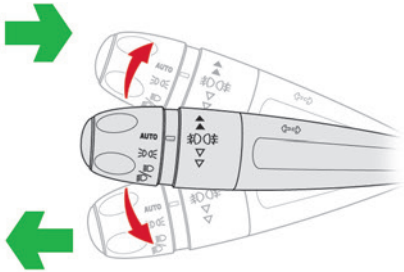
The lighting goes off when you switch off the ignition, but you can always switch it on again using the lighting control stalk.

Travelling abroad
If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Never look too closely at the luminous beam of LED headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

Direction indicators



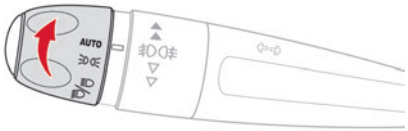
► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Automatic headlamp illumination

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as the automatic rain sensitive wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



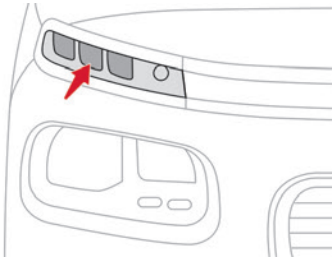
► Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. When the function is activated, a message is also displayed.
► Turn the ring to **another position**. An onscreen message is displayed to confirm that the function has been deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard or at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps



The front lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.
They provide the following functions:
– Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position with adequate light level).
– Sidelamps (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

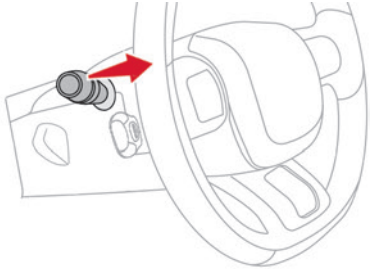
> The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.
► Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).
This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.
To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Guide-me-home lighting

Manual



Switching on/off
► With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk to switch the function on or off.
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic

With the ring in the "**AUTO**" position, when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.
The activation, deactivation and duration of guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, when the light is poor, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.
Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

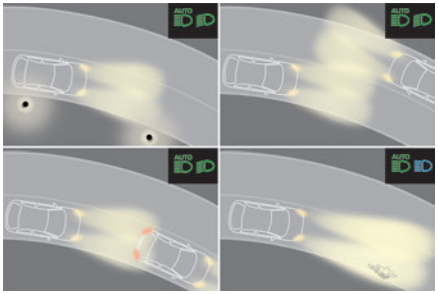
Automatic headlamp dipping

This system automatically changes between dipped and main beam headlamps according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

> This system is a driving aid.
> The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the

prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

The system will be operational as soon as you exceed 16 mph (25 km/h).
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.



Activation/Deactivation

Activation and deactivation are done via the vehicle configuration menu.
When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode.
The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

– The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

– The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the fog lamps are switched on or the system detects dense fog.
When the fog lamps are switched off or the vehicle leaves the area of dense fog, the function is automatically reactivated.

This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

► A "headlamp flash" pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
– if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
– if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

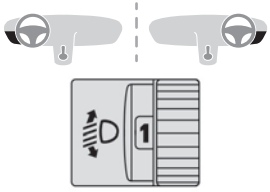
The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
– under conditions of poor visibility (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
– if the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker, etc.),
– if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
The system is not able to detect:
– road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
– vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
– vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid inconvenience to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Unladen.
1 Partial load.
2 Medium load.
3 Maximum authorised load.
4 5 6 Not used.

The initial setting is position **0**.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be activated/deactivated:
– automatic windscreen wipers,
– rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

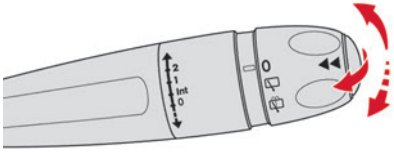
In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

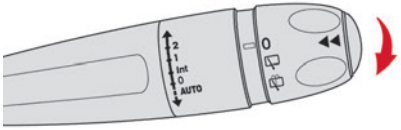
Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

With manual wiping (intermittent)



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2 Fast wiping (heavy rain)

1 Normal wiping (moderate rain)

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)

0 Off

or

AUTO Automatic wiping (press down, then release).

Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.
The screenwash and windscreen wipers operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled.
A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

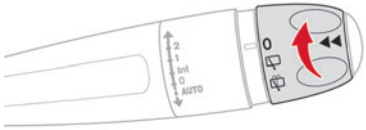
i On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control temporarily closes the air intake, to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

i The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.
Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.
In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the fluid and on the exterior brightness, the liquid spray may be barely noticeable.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty.
Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



Rear wiper selection ring:

0 Off.

Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation

Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

i This system is activated by default.

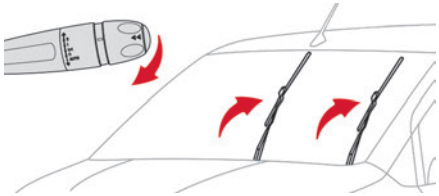
! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
– handle them with care,
– clean them regularly using soapy water,
– avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
– replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



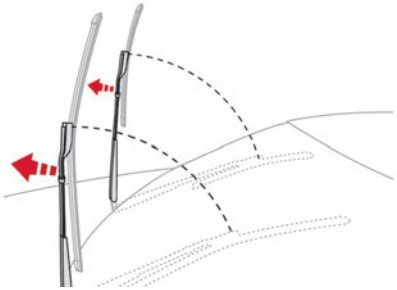
► Actuating the wiper control stalk within one minute of switching off the ignition will position the wiper blades vertically.
► Proceed with the desired operation or replace the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



► Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
► Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

> ! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
> Do not touch the wiper blades. Risk of irreparable deformation.
> Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

► Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

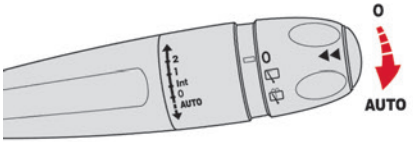
> i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
► Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

► Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
► Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
► Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
► Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers



The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on

Briefly push the control stalk downwards.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

Depending on version, this symbol appears in the display screen or this indicator lamp comes on on the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Off

Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).
This indicator lamp goes off on the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

> i If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must

be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic windscreen wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.
Switch off the automatic windscreen wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

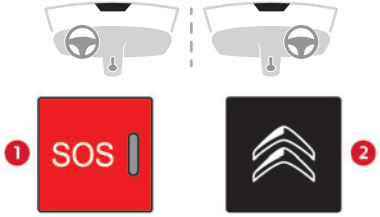
! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**
Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**
The relevant certificates are available on the http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/ website.

Emergency or assistance call (type 1)



Localised Emergency Call

► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lighting of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the “Localised Emergency Call” call centre.*.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The lamp remains lit until the call is ended.
"Localised Emergency Call" immediately geolocates your vehicle and contacts you in your

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

language*, and - if necessary - requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**.
In countries where the service is not available, or when the geolocation service has been expressly declined, the call is routed directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location information.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, independently of the deployment of any airbags.

Operation of the system

– Indicator lamp on (for 3 seconds) upon switching on the ignition: the system is operating correctly.
– Fixed red indicator lamp: system malfunction.
– Flashing red indicator lamp: replace the back-up battery.
In the last 2 cases, the emergency and assistance call services may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

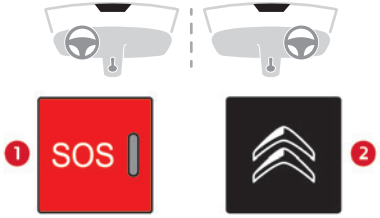
► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message**).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Geolocation

► Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing buttons **1** and **2** and then pressing button **2** to confirm.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Emergency or assistance call (type 2)



Localised Emergency Call (PE112)

► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lighting of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services***.

* According to the geographic coverage of ‘Localised Emergency Call’, ‘Localised Assistance Call’ and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.
** According to the geographic coverage of ‘Localised Emergency Call’, ‘Localised Assistance Call’ and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.
*** In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

‘Localised Emergency Call’ immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services*.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The indicator lamp flashes when the vehicle data is sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, independently of the deployment of any airbags.

i ‘Localised Emergency Call’ is a service that can be accessed free of charge.

System operation

– Upon switching on the ignition, if the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– If the indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction
– If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the emergency battery.
In the latter two cases, emergency and assistance call services may not work.
Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

i **Data processing**
All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.
Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised Emergency Call" system used with the “112” European single emergency call number.
The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the “112” emergency number.

i **Data storage**
Data contained in the system’s memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle’s three most recent locations are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

i **Access to data**
You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

* In areas covered by ‘Localised Emergency Call’ and ‘Localised Assistance Call’.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Localised Assistance Call

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or position) between your vehicle and the CITROËN brand.
It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Localised Assistance Call" button to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Hazard warning lamps

► Pressing the red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the button.

* According to the geographic coverage of ‘Localised Emergency Call’, ‘Localised Assistance Call’ and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Horn

► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:
– Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
– Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
– Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
– Dynamic stability control (DSC).
– Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

This warning lamp comes on fixed in the event of an ABS malfunction.
The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The normal operation of the ABS may result in slight vibrations in the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation optimises traction using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid wheel spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability while accelerating.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or

more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.
This warning lamp on the instrument panel flashes to indicate that they are operating.

Deactivation / Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
However, it is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.
These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or from 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), the systems can be reactivated manually.
Press this button or turn the thumbwheel to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel comes on: the DSC/ASR systems no longer have an effect on engine operation.
To reactivate the system:
Press this button.
Or
Turn the thumbwheel to this position.
The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel goes off.

Malfunction

In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an onscreen message and audible signal.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

ASR / DSC
These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.
The use of snow tyres is recommended, to ensure that these systems remain effective in winter conditions. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for the vehicle.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.
At speeds between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects oscillating trailer movements (snaking), it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow the vehicle.
This warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel and the brake lamps light up to draw attention to this corrective action.
For information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine Technical Data and Towed Loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate
To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
If you wish to continue towing a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

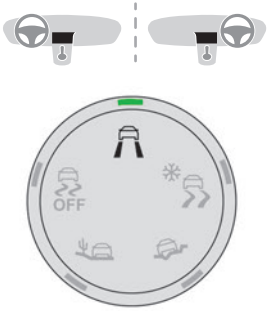
! The trailer stability assist system offers enhanced safety in normal driving, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It should not encourage the driver to take risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.), or to drive at excessive speeds.
In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Advanced Grip Control

A special, patented traction control system which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand.
This system, optimised for operation in a range of conditions, enables you to manoeuvre in most slippery conditions (encountered during normal passenger car use).

When combined with suitable tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.
The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to harness the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.
A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.
An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes



Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the operation of the engine or of the brakes in the event of a change of trajectory.
These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) and whenever the ignition is switched on.

Recommendations
Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:
– crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
– driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
– crossing a stream.

Hill Assist Descent Control

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud, etc.) or a steep gradient.
This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.
During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

For the system to activate, the slope must be greater than 5%.
The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.
Otherwise engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling.
With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

The system is not available:
– if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h),
– if the speed of the vehicle is being controlled by the Adaptive Cruise Control, depending on the type of gearbox.

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.
The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.
The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or when moving at speeds up to approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).

► To select the system, at speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lights up; this lamp appears in green in the instrument panel.
The system becomes active at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).
► When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:
– if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly,
– if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

On a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.
The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.
If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the green indicator lamp in the button remains on.
Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.
You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Off

► Press the button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp on the instrument panel also goes off.
At speeds above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Malfunction

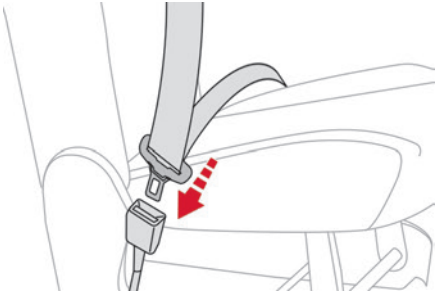
In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a **single** pyrotechnic pretensioning system (or **double** on the driver's side, depending on equipment) and a force limiter (or **progressive force limiter** on the driver's side, depending on equipment options).
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the **single** pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The **double** pyrotechnic pretensionsining system operates the same way, except that it uses two anchor points rather than one, for enhanced effectiveness.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.
The **progressive force limiter** operates in the same way, except that it takes the driver's stature into consideration, thus optimising the reduction in the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the occupant's chest in the event of an impact.

Fastening



► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unlocking

► Press the red button on the buckle.
► Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Rear seat belts (row 2)

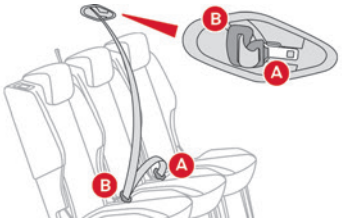
Outer seats

Depending on equipment, they may be fitted with a single pretensioning system and force limiters. Be sure to put the correct seat belt in the correct buckle.
Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.

Centre seat

The seat belt does not have a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and force limiters.

Installation



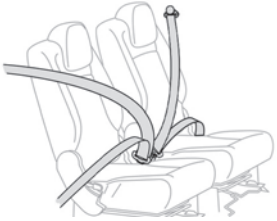
► Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** into the right buckle (located on the passenger's left side when seated in the vehicle).
► Insert the tongue **B** into the left buckle (located on the passenger's right side when seated in the vehicle).
► Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Removal and storage

► Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the button on buckle **A**.
► Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

> **!** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts check that the lateral belts are properly tensioned. The central seat belt must be completely reeled in.

Rear seat belts (row 3)



These seat belts are not fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system or force limiter.

Seat belt(s) warning lamps

1. Front left seat belt warning lamp (or depending on country, driver's warning lamp).
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp (or depending on country, driver's warning lamp).
3. Rear right seat belt warning lamp (row 2).
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp (row 2).
5. Rear left seat belt warning lamp (row 2).

At speeds above approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flashes for 2 minutes, accompanied by an audible signal. Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remains on until the driver or the front passenger and/or the rear passenger(s) fasten their seat belt.

Front seat belt warning lamp(s)

On switching on the ignition, warning lamp **1** comes on in the instrument panel, and the corresponding warning lamp (**1** or **2**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamp display if the driver's seat belt and/or the passenger(s) seat belt is/are not fastened or is/are unfastened.

Rear seat belt(s) warning lamp(s)

The corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5**) lights up red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display screen if one or more rear passengers (row 2) unfasten their seat belt.

These seat belt warning lamps only apply to row 2.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role fully.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Installation
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
– be tightened as close to the body as possible,
– be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
– be used to restrain only one person,
– not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
– not be converted or modified in order not to affect its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of impacts, the pyrotechnic pretensioner device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

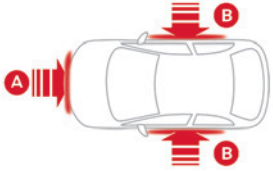
Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in row 2) in the event of violent collisions.
The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

– in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in row 2); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
– in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

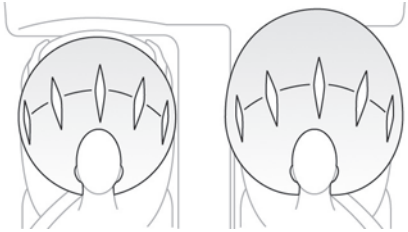
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

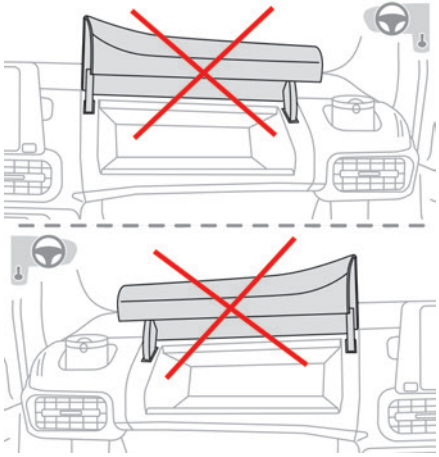
Front airbags



System that protects the driver and front passenger(s) in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the roof.

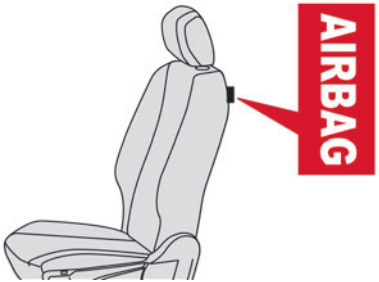
Deployment

The airbags are deployed (except the front passenger airbag if it has been deactivated) in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front towards the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, on the driver's side, and the dashboard, on the passenger side, to cushion their forward movement.



When driving, keep the glove box closed. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Lateral airbags



If fitted to the vehicle, this system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the abdomen and head.
Each lateral airbag is mounted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

If fitted to the vehicle, this system offers enhanced protection for the driver and passengers (except in the central seats) in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the outer rear passenger and the windows.

Malfunction

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**
Adopt a normal upright sitting position.
Fasten the seat belt ensuring it is correctly positioned and adjusted.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag systems must only be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 4 ft 11” (150 cm) tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
– **Children weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rear facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– ‘**rear facing**’ up to the age of 3,
– ‘**forward facing**’ over the age of 3.

Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the harness of child seats, keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures

the child seat firmly on the seat of the vehicle. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Installing a booster seat
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Additional protections
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
– a child alone and unattended in a vehicle,
– a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
– the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

Row 2

Forward-facing or rearward-facing

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
► Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.
► Adjust the rear seat (in row 2) to the fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the vehicle's front seat.

Row 3

If a child seat is installed on a passenger seat in the third row, move the seat to its rearmost longitudinal position with the backrest straightened, so that the child seat and the child's legs do not touch the seats in the second row.

Never fit a child seat with a support leg in the third row.

Child seat at the front

► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

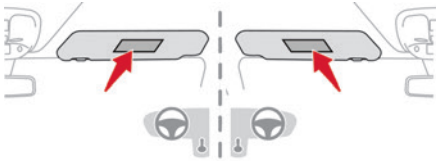
"Forward facing"

! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys**.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

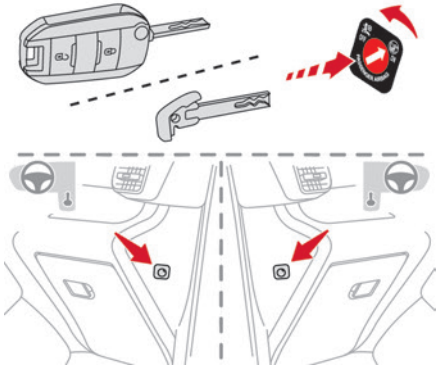
! To guarantee the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when a "rear facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation control**
Installing a “rear facing” child seat on the front passenger seat or bench seat is expressly prohibited! Doing so would expose the child to the risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment.

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

The control is located on the side of the glove box.



With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal the deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal the activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the side rear seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L6 "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or on the rear side seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(c)** according to the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

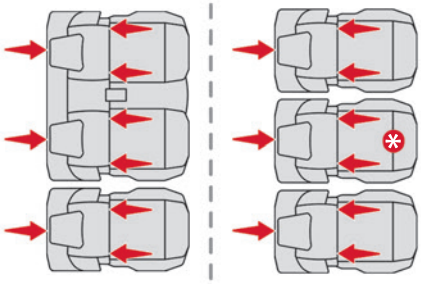
			Child weight and age guide			
Seat			**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(d)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**15-25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**22-36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 **(a)**	Fixed passenger seat		**X**			
	Passenger seat with forwards and backwards adjustment	With passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	**U (f)**			
		With passenger airbag activated "ON"	**X**	**UF (f)**		
Row 2 **(b) (e)**			**U**			
Row 3 **(b) (e)**			**U (g) (h)**			

Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
(c) Universal child seat: child seat suitable for installation in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(d) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers must not be installed on the front passenger seat(s) or the seats in row 3.
(e) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, move the seats in front of it forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.
(f) With the fixed passenger seat (which cannot be placed in the folded position), adjust the backrest angle to 0°.
For more information on the **Front seats** and, in particular, the folded position for the backrest, refer to the corresponding section.
(g) On the **M** version, fold down the backrests in row 2.
(h) Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the third row.
U Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for rearward-facing and/or forward-facing use.
UF Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved for forward-facing use.
X Seat position not suitable for installing a child seat for the stated weight class.

"ISOFIX" mountings

Row 2



* On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.

The vehicle has been approved in accordance with the latest ISOFIX regulation.
If fitted on the vehicle, the regulation ISOFIX mountings are identified by labels.

The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:
– Two front rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an "ISOFIX" marking,
– If fitted to your vehicle, a rear ring **B**, located behind the vehicle's seat, called Top Tether, for securing the upper strap, indicated by a "Top Tether" marking.
The Top Tether secures the upper strap of child seats that have them. In case of frontal impact, this device limits the tilting of the child seat forward.
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
The ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two front rings **A**.
Some child seats also have an upper strap which is attached to rear ring **B**.
To secure the child seat to the Top Tether:
– remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
– pass the strap of the child seat over the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods,
– attach the hook of the upper strap to rear ring **B**,
– tighten the upper strap.

! Incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.
Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the installation guide supplied with the child seat.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Child weight and age guide									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 - 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Cot**		**rearward-facing**			**rearward-facing**		**forward-facing**		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Row 1 **(a)**		Not ISOFIX									
Row 2 **(b)**	Rear seat behind the driver's seat	**IL (c)**		**IL**					**IUF/IL**		
	Centre rear seat **(f)** and passenger's side rear seat			**IL (d)**							
Row 3 **(b) (e)**		Not ISOFIX									

Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
(c) Installing a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
(d) Adjust the front passenger seat without height adjuster to the fully back position.
(e) Installing child seats with a support leg is prohibited in the third row.
(f) On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.
IUF Seat suitable for installing a forward-facing ISOFIX Universal seat secured using the upper strap.
IL Seat suitable for an ISOFIX Semi-Universal child seat, which may be either:
– rearward-facing, fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

– forward-facing, fitted with a support leg.
– a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.
For more information on **ISOFIX child seats** and in particular on securing the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locations for i-Size child seats

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with i-Size approved ISOFIX mountings.

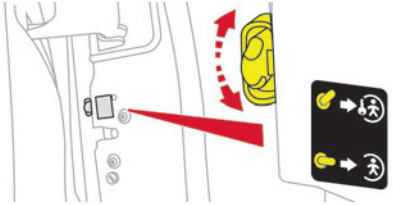
Seat position		i-Size child restraint system
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger seat	Not i-Size
Row 2 **(b) (c) (d)**		i-U
Row 3 **(b)**		Not i-Size

Key

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) To install a rearward-facing or forward-facing child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
(c) Adjust the front seat to its maximum height.
(d) On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.
i-U Suitable for forward-facing and rearward-facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.
i-UF Only suitable for forward-facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



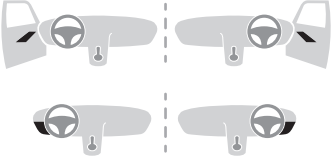
Locking/Unlocking

► Rotate the control located on the edge of the side door **up** to **lock** it, or **down** to **unlock** it.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged rear doors or tailgate) using their interior controls.

Activation/Deactivation



► With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock.
When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

i With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside.

i In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated (child lock off) automatically.

! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Do not drive with the sliding side door open.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Driving recommendations

► Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
► Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
► Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
► Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
► During long trips, take a break every two hours.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

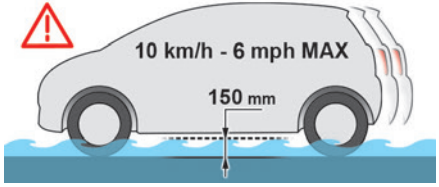
! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.).** The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

► check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
► deactivate the Stop & Start function,
► drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
► do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

i Respect the maximum towable weights. **At altitude:** reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the density of the air decreases with altitude and the performance of the engine reduces.

! **New vehicle:** do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

i If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

> i If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill increases the temperature of the coolant. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The cooling capacity of the fan does not increase with engine speed.
► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed, so as to limit the heating-up.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind the increased susceptibility to the wind that the vehicle will have.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the screen. The vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

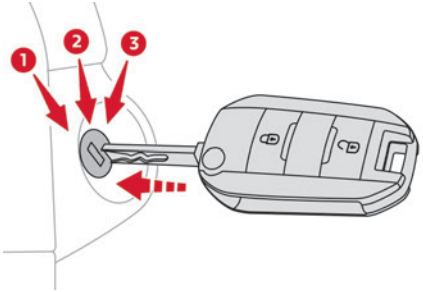
Starting/switching off the engine

Starting

The parking brake must be applied.

► With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.
► With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position **P** then depress the brake pedal.

With the conventional key / With the remote control key



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

► Insert the key into the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.

► Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

In certain circumstances, you may have to turn the steering wheel firmly to move the wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).

► Turn the key to position **2**, Ignition On, to activate the engine pre-heating system.

► Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then turn the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor until the engine starts. As soon as the engine starts, release the key.

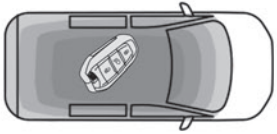
The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, the following recommendations should be followed:
– In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
– Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and the exterior temperature exceeds 35 °C, the engine's idle speed may increase, up to 1,300 rpm, depending on the cooling requirements.
– In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
– In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23 °C), to ensure correct operation and durability of your vehicle's mechanical components (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.
Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
– never place one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting



► Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

With a manual gearbox, the steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine starts more or less instantly.

The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some

climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:
– In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

– Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and when the exterior temperature exceeds 35°C, the idle engine speed can accelerate up to 1,300 rpm depending on the air conditioning requirements.
– In wintry conditions, when the ignition is switched on, the duration of lighting of the preheating indicator lamp is extended. Wait until it goes off before starting the engine.
– In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of the vehicle, engine and gearbox, **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.
Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

i With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

! For **Diesel vehicles**, when the temperature is below zero, starting will only occur once the preheating warning lamp is off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

i The presence of the “Keyless Entry and Starting” system remote control is imperative in the recognition zone.
Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person.
If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed.
Move the remote control into the zone in order to be able to start the engine.

i If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed in the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column. A message is displayed.

Switching off

► Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine at idle.

► With a manual gearbox, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
► With an automatic gearbox, ideally select position **P**.

With the conventional key/With the remote control key

► Turn the key all the way to position **1 (Stop)** and remove it from the ignition.
► To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

► Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also turned off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the remote control with you, even for a short time.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the ignition

i When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

With Keyless Entry and Starting

► With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
With a manual gearbox, the engine switches off and the steering column locks.
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine switches off.

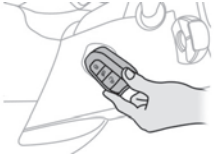
i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Switching on the ignition with Keyless Entry and Starting

With the Keyless Entry and Starting system's electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.
► Pressing this button **again** switches off the ignition and allows the vehicle to be locked.

Back-up starting with Keyless Entry and Starting

Should your vehicle not detect the electronic key in the recognition zone, because the remote control battery is flat, a back-up reader is provided to the left behind the steering wheel, to allow starting.



► Place and hold the remote control against the reader, then:
► With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.
► With an automatic gearbox, place the selector in position **P** then depress the brake pedal.
► Then, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Forced switch-off with the Keyless Entry and Starting

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).
► To do this, press the "**START/STOP**" button and keep it pressed for about 3 seconds.
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Remote control not recognised with Keyless Entry and Starting

If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.
► To confirm switching off the engine, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake

Application

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release on level ground

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope or on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

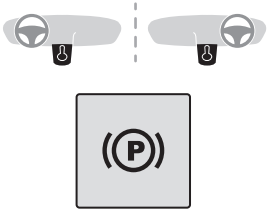
i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

! With a manual gearbox, engage a gear and then switch off the ignition.

! With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P**, then switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.



At any time, with the engine running:

► to apply the parking brake, **briefly** pull the control lever;

► to release it, briefly **push** the control lever while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and on the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake, accompanied by display of the message "Parking brake applied".

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

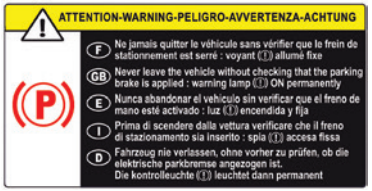
This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake does not work.

As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.

As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed.

If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope or if the vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and with a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if the vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels

towards the kerb and select mode **P** with an automatic gearbox.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:
► Press the brake pedal.
► While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.
The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:
► Pull briefly on the control lever.
Confirmation of the application instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.
The application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and of the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.
The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.
With a manual gearbox
► Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse.
► Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.
With an automatic gearbox
► Press the brake pedal.
► Select position **D**, **M** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

! When stationary with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily - risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is applied automatically when the engine is switched off**.
When the parking brake is applied, the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever come on, accompanied by the onscreen message "Parking brake applied".

! It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

i With automatic operation, it is also possible to manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, while mode **N** is selected, opening the driver's door triggers an audible signal. It stops when the driver's door closes again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.
► Start the engine.
► Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
► Release the control lever.
► Press and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.
AUTO (P) OFF Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.
► Release the control lever and the brake pedal.
From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.
Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off).

Emergency braking

In the event of a fault with the brake pedal or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, driver under instruction), a continuous pull on the electric parking brake control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled; it is interrupted when the control lever is released.
The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.

(ABS) If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed.
In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

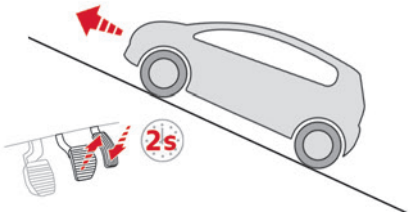
Hill start assist

This system keeps your vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
This system is only active when:
– the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
– certain slope conditions are met,
– the driver's door is closed.

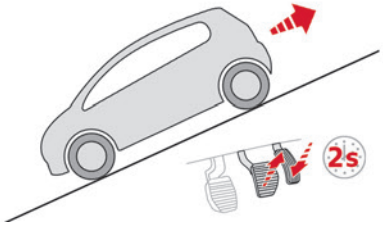
! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. After that, ensure that the parking brake indicator lamp and the indicator lamp **P** in the electric parking brake control lever are on fixed.

! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:
– provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox.
– provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction

These warning lamps come on in the event of a malfunction.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear

► With the clutch pedal fully depressed, you must place the gear lever in neutral.
► Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate engine starting:
– always select neutral,
– depress the clutch pedal.

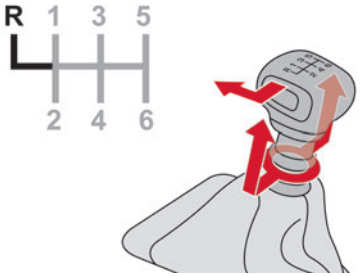
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

► Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



► Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

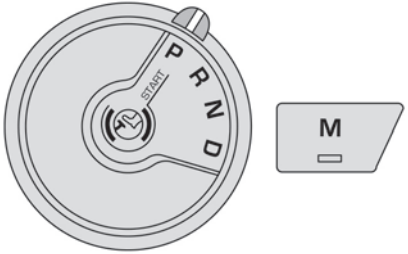
i As a safety precaution and to facilitate engine starting:
– always select neutral,
– depress the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox

8-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:
– **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox:
– **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.
In automatic mode, you can still change gear manually using the steering mounted control paddles (e.g. to overtake).

Gear selector

! To turn the gear selector in complete safety, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake pedal.



P. Park.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
D. Drive (automatic operation).
M. Manual (manual operation with sequential changing of the gears).

i Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in a car wash tunnel.

Steering mounted controls

► Pull the right-hand "**+**" or left-hand "**-**" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

i The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When you move the selector or press button **M**, the corresponding gear and indicator lamp are shown on the instrument panel.
The "**-**" symbol is displayed if a value is invalid.

► If the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed on the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

Moving off

► With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.

► Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.

► Release the parking brake.

► Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

! When moving off on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal.

► Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

i If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started.

If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

! When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

Never leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

D ► Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

If the accelerator pedal is sharply released, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Temporary manual control of gear changes

You can temporarily assume control of gear changing using the "**+**" et "**-**" steering-mounted controls. The gear change request will be executed if the engine speed permits.

This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.

After a few seconds with no inputs via the control paddles, the gearbox reverts to automatic operation.

Creeping (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).

When the engine is at idle, with the parking brake released and gear position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle begins to creep forward** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).

! As a safety precaution, never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

Manual operation

► With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** to enable 6-speed **sequential** gear changing.
The indicator lamp for the button comes on.
► Operate the "**+**" or "**-**" steering mounted controls.
M appears and the engaged gears are shown in succession on the instrument panel.
► You can revert to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.
The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

i In manual mode, there is no need to release the accelerator pedal while changing gear.

i It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

i If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is shown.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox automatically selects gear **M1**.

i To preserve the brakes while descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (change down or select a lower gear).
Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative.
Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

i Depending on the road configuration (e.g. mountainous road), manual operation may be preferable.
Automatic operation may not always be suitable, and does not enable engine braking.

Invalid value during manual operation

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).
► Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

i A point of resistance may be noticed when moving to position **P**.
If the selector is not in position **P** when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.
► Return the gear selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

! On a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

! In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R**

and from **N** to **R.** This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
– if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time (braking or acceleration must be done only with the right foot),
– if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), position the selector on **N** and apply the parking brake.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)
This system helps reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may advise to skip one or more gears.
Gear shift recommendations should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and the recommended gear.

i The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear;
– engaging reverse.

Stop & Start

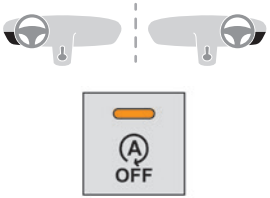
The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

! **Opening the bonnet**
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

! **Driving on flooded roads**
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation/Activation

With button



► To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp **is lit** when the system is **deactivated**.

With audio system/touch screen

The system is activated and deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

> **!** If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

> **i** The system reactivates automatically whenever the engine is started by the driver.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The sliding side door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
– The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
– The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically goes into standby as soon as the driver indicates the intention of stopping.
– With a **manual gearbox**: at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) or with the vehicle stationary (depending on engine), with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
– With an **automatic gearbox**: at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) or with the vehicle stationary (depending on engine), with the brake pedal depressed or the gear selector in position **N**.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if all of the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases.
– Steep slope (ascending or descending).
– Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button).
– The electric parking brake is applied or being applied.
– Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
– Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

> **i** After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

> **i** During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
– **With a manual gearbox**: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
– **With an automatic gearbox**:

- With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
- With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if all conditions for operation are met again and in the following case.
– Speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on the engine).
In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:
In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.
The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
Have the vehicle checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.
Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, prompting you to place the gear selector in position **N** and depress the brake pedal.
► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding.
– lengthens braking distances.
– causes premature wear of the tyres.
– increases fuel consumption.

i The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Checking tyre pressures**
This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i **Snow chains**
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

i **Spare wheel**
The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.

► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.

► If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

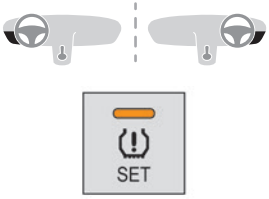
i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

Reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Without audio system



► Press this button for about 3 seconds then release it. Reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

With audio system or touch screen

With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction

These warning lamps come on in the event of a malfunction.

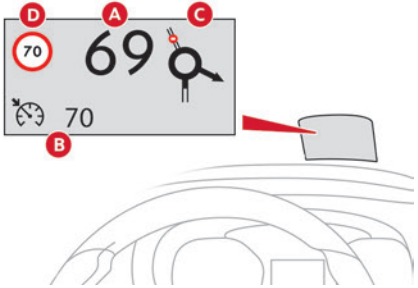
In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Head-up display

This system projects various information onto a smoked projection blade situated in the driver's field of vision, enabling them to drive without taking their eyes off the road.

Information displayed during operation



Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

A. The speed of your vehicle.

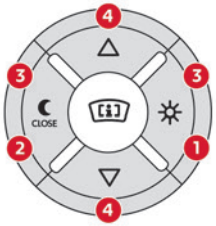
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.

C. If your vehicle is suitably equipped, distances between vehicles, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.

D. If your vehicle is suitably equipped, speed limit information.

For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the section **Audio equipment and telematics**.

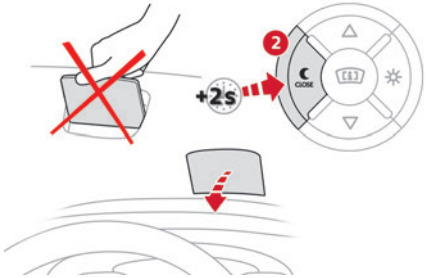
Selector



1. On.
2. Off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.

Activation/Deactivation

► With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the projection blade.



► Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the projection blade.
The state of the system is saved when the engine is switched off and restored on restarting.

Height adjustment

► With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using the buttons **4**:
- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

► With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using the buttons **3**:
- on the "sun" to increase the brightness,
- on the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the projection blade (or in its recess) so as not to impede its movement and correct operation.

In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.), the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the projection blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth, or detergent or solvent products, due to the risk of scratching the projection blade or damaging the non-reflective coating.

This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are saved when the ignition is switched off.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

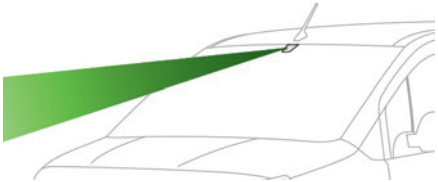
Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climactic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane.
The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep the feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar
The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.



Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: "**Driving aids camera: visibility limited, see user guide**".
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors
The operation of the sensors as well as the associated functions may be disturbed by sound interference such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.

Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

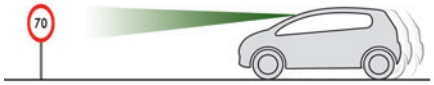
Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the sensors and cameras.

Mats
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
► ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
► never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:
– Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
– Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

Navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

– Signs indicating an intersection area detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into an intersection area Example: 	**Without CITROËN Connect Nav** 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) **With CITROËN Connect Nav** Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.

– Certain qualifier plates are detected by the camera.

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit in rain Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit if towing	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: ↑800m↑	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit for vehicles whose gross vehicle weight or gross train weight is less than 3.5 tonnes	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in snow Example:	If the exterior temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit at certain times Example: 16-18h	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work correctly when changing country, the speed unit in the instrument panel must correspond to that of the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

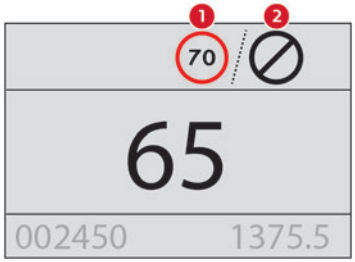
i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation / Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

It is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication
   or
2. End of speed limit indication

The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.

On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value.

In the case of suggested maximum speeds, the first time the vehicle exceeds the suggested speed by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed flashing for 10 seconds.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
– atmospheric pollution,
– when towing,
– driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
– Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit,
– young drivers.

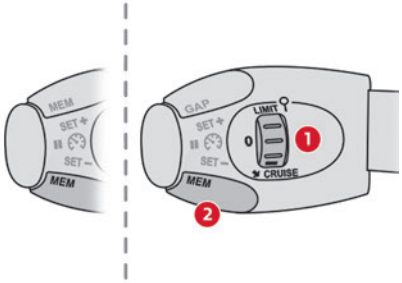
It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
– road signs that are obstructed, do not comply with the standard, are damaged or distorted,
– obsolete or incorrect maps.

Recommendation

In addition to **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

> **i** For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel

3. Speed limit indication
4. Speed memorisation prompt
5. Current speed setting

Memorising the speed

► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.

The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as the new speed setting.

> ℹ If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.
► Press button **2once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed, confirming the request.
► Press button **2again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the normal display.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This additional system recognises these **road signs** and displays them in the instrument panel if the appropriate display mode is selected.
One-way street: if you start driving the wrong way down a one-way street, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).
Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

> ! The actual road signs always take priority over the display from the system.
> The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation / Deactivation

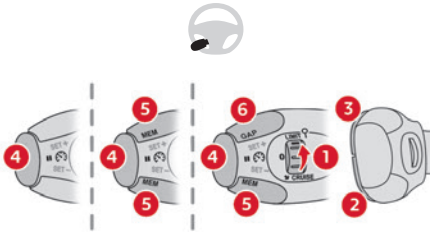
It is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

Steering mounted control

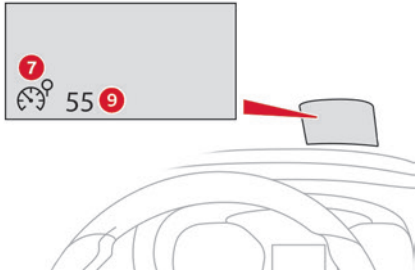


1. ON (**LIMIT** position) / OFF (position **0**)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause / resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

Head-up display



6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Speed limiter on/pause status indication
8. Programmed speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.

► If you are satisfied with the limit speed setting (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.

► Pressing button **4** again temporarily pauses the function.

> i An audible warning will sound if the vehicle's speed exceeds the speed setting for an extended period.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:

► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).
To change the limit speed setting using memorised speeds, via the touch screen:
► press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
► press the button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.
To change the limit speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation:
► the suggested speed is displayed on the instrument panel,
► press button **5** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request,
► press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The speed is immediately displayed as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Press the accelerator pedal down fully.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed speed setting flashes.
Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.
When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

Dashes are displayed (flashing, initially, then fixed) in the event of a speed limiter malfunction. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i **Exceeding the programmed speed setting**
You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

! **Operating limits**
Never use the system in the following situations:
– in an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road,
– in heavy traffic,
– on winding or steep roads,
– on slippery or flooded roads,
– in unfavourable climatic conditions,
– driving on a speed circuit,
– driving on a rolling road,
– use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Programmable cruise control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

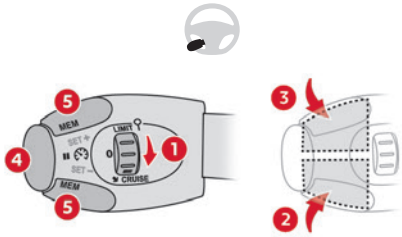
This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value

programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

> The cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with Stop & Start.

> Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

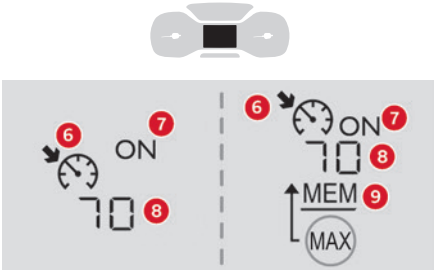
Steering mounted control



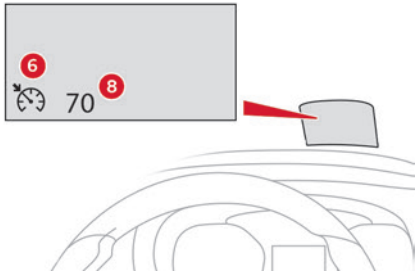
1. ON (**CRUISE** position) / OFF (position **0**)
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / increase speed setting
4. Pausing / resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Cruise control pause/resume status indication
8. Programmed speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.

► Press button **2** or **3** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
► Release the accelerator pedal.

► Pressing button **4** temporarily pauses the function.
► Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

i Operation of the cruise control can also be paused temporarily:
– by pressing the brake pedal.
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Changing the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.
To change the cruise speed setting, based on the vehicle's current speed:
► In +/- 1 mph (1.6 km/h) steps, briefly press button **2** or **3** as often as necessary.
► Continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (8 km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed similar to the vehicle's current speed, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration.

To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:
► Press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings.
► Press the button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.
To change the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation:
► The suggested speed is displayed on the instrument panel.
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.
The value is immediately shown as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (when overtaking, for example) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, cruise control takes over again and the programmed speed setting stops flashing.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, with the vehicle speed above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction

Dashes are displayed (flashing, initially, then fixed) in the event of a cruise control system malfunction.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.
This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
With the **Stop function**, the system manages the braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

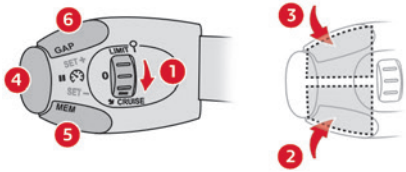
To do so, it has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position) / OFF (position**0**)
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / increase speed setting
4. Pausing / resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds recorded using Memorising speeds
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**(MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

Use

Activation of the system (pause)

► With the engine running, turn the knob **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

Switching on of cruise control and choice of speed setting

With a manual gearbox, your speed must be between 19 and 99 mph (30 and 160 km/h).
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or **M** must be selected and your speed must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h).
► Press button **2** or **3**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately in operation (green display).
► Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

Pausing / resumption of cruise control

► Press **4** or press the **brake pedal**. To pause cruise control, it is also possible to:
- shift from mode **D** to **N**;
- press the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds;
- press the electric parking brake control;

► Press **4** to restart cruise control. Cruise control may have been paused automatically:
- when the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox;
- when the speed of the engine goes below 1100 rpm with a manual gearbox;
- by triggering of the ESC system.

With a manual gearbox, the driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then above 19 mph (30 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.
With an automatic gearbox, following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused. The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then above 19 mph (30 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.
If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control which was paused, the message "Activation not possible, unsuitable conditions" is briefly displayed if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Modifying the programmed speed setting with the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation function

► Press **5** to accept the speed suggested by the function in the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting fairly close to the current speed of the vehicle.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds (“Distant”, “Normal”, “Close“), then press again to select a threshold.
After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Press the accelerator pedal fully. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated as long as acceleration is maintained. "Cruise control suspended" is displayed.

System deactivation

► Turn knob **1** upwards to the **OFF** position.

Displays in the instrument panel

7. Vehicle detected by the system (full symbol)
8. Cruise control active (colour not in grey)
9. Value of the speed setting
10. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation
11. Vehicle held stationary (versions with automatic gearbox)

12. Inter-vehicle distance setting
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Messages and alerts

The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.

"Cruise control paused" or "Cruise control suspended" following a brief acceleration by the driver.

"Cruise control active", no vehicle detected.

"Cruise control paused", vehicle detected.

"Cruise control active", vehicle detected.

"Take back control" (orange).

► Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

"Take back control" (red).

► **Take back control of the vehicle immediately**: the system cannot manage the current driving situation.

"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable". The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop function

"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised: cruise control is paused.

The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Operating limits

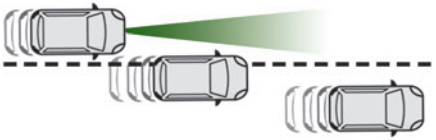
Cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

Elements not detected by the system:

– Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.

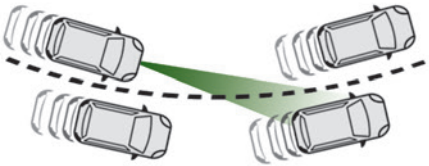
– Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).



– Vehicles crossing your lane.

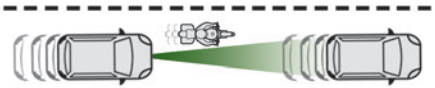
– Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations in which the driver must pause the cruise control system:

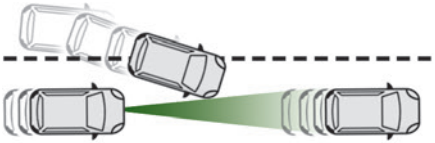


– Vehicles in a tight bend.

– When approaching a roundabout.



– When following a narrow vehicle.
Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.
Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:
– Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



– When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

! Pay particular attention:
– When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
– When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

! If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera.
– Brake lamps not working.

! If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:
– Carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack.
– Towing.
– Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlamps or painting the front bumper).

Malfunction

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an onscreen message, to indicate a system malfunction.
Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a “space-saver” type spare wheel is detected or in the event of a malfunction of the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

Memorising speeds

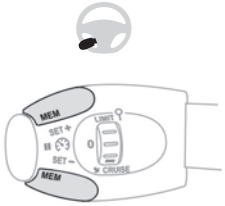
This function, used only for the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, lets you save speed settings that will subsequently be proposed for the purpose of configuring these two systems.
You can memorise multiple speed settings for each of the two systems.
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only change speed settings when stationary.

Changing a speed setting

In the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu, select "**Driving functions**" then "**Memorised speed settings**".

"MEM" button

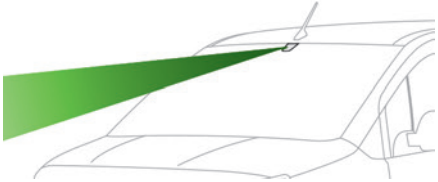


With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.
For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Programmable cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system allows:
– the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front,
– a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.
This system is comprised of three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert,
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
The DSC/ASR systems must not be deactivated.
All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.
In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
– towing a trailer,
– carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
– with snow chains fitted,
– before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
– before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
– towed vehicle, engine running,
– Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated after the use of certain "space-saver" type spare wheels is detected (smaller diameter).
The system is automatically deactivated after detection of a fault with the brake pedal switch or with at least two brake lamps.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Collision Risk Alert

It warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels

of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.
They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speeds of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, signalling that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.
Level 3: finally, in some cases, a haptic alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.

> Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
> **Important:** the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

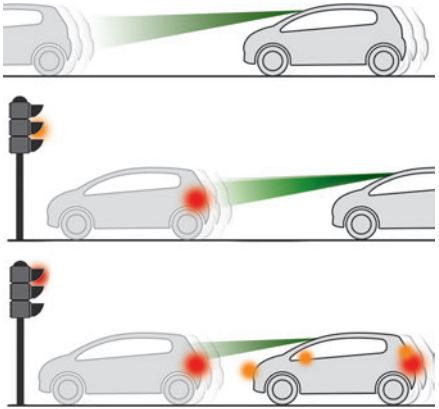
This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.

The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu.
You can select one of three pre-defined thresholds:
– "**Distant**",
– "**Normal**",
– "**Close**".
The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics.
This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:
– The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
– The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.

– The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

This system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Malfunction

In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

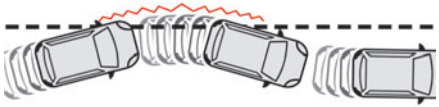
If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the road and at the edges of the road (depending on version), the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

– The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).

– The traffic lane must be delimited by a dividing line.

– The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.

– The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.

– The ESC system must be activated and not faulty.

The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (for example, if the dividing line marking disappears).

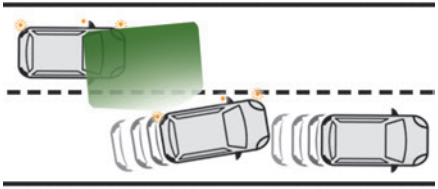
Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings

detected or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).
The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
These alerts are not displayed sequentially.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		(grey)	Function deactivated.
ON		(grey)	System active, conditions not met: – speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), – no lane marking recognised, – ASR/DSC systems deactivated or operation of ESC system triggered, – "sport" driving.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		(grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (for example, due to detection of a trailer or use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).
ON		(green)	Lane marking detection. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		(orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of unintentional crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		(orange)/(green) "Hold the wheel"	– If, while correcting the trajectory, the system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. – If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds. This message may also be displayed if you have your hands on the steering wheel.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
– ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
– speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
– electrical connection of a trailer,
– use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
– dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
– driving where there are no lane markings,
– activation of the direction indicators,
– crossing the inside line on a bend,
– driving in a tight corner,
– inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

During a correction, if the driver is inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 10 seconds), a warning message appears. If the driver remains inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 2 more seconds), the correction is interrupted.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– insufficient contrast between the road surface and the shoulders (e.g. shade),
– lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
– running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Risk of undesirable operation

We recommend deactivating the system in the following driving situations:
– driving on damaged, unstable or very slippery (ice) road surfaces,
– unfavourable weather conditions,
– driving on a speed circuit,
– driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation / Activation

► Press this button to deactivate / reactivate the system at any time.

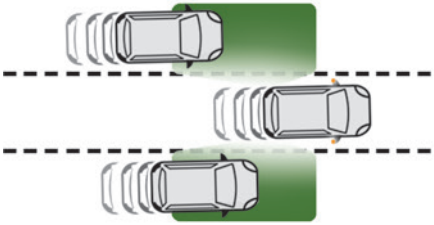
Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button and this warning lamp in the instrument panel.
The system is **automatically reactivated** every time the ignition is switched on.

Malfunction

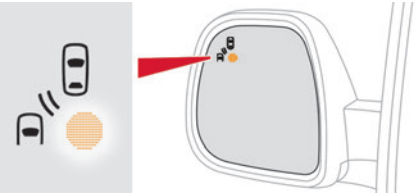
In the event of a system malfunction, these warning lamps come on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Monitoring System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system includes sensors, placed on the sides of the bumpers, and warns the driver of the potentially dangerous presence of another vehicle (car, truck, motorcycle) in the blind spot areas of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision).



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
– **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken;
– **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

Activation / Deactivation

Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

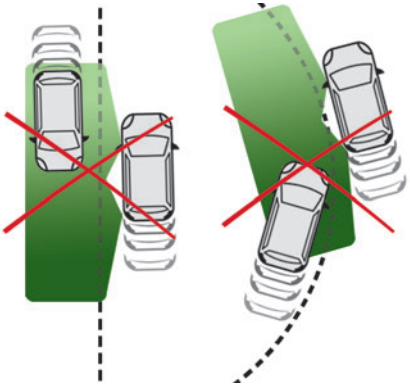
> The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

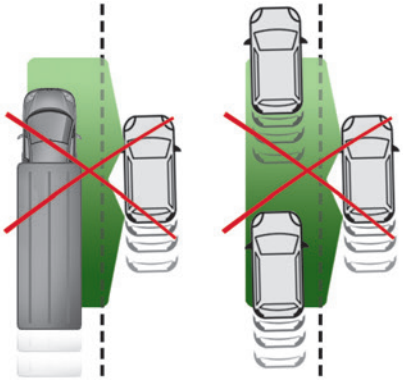
> The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Conditions for operation

– All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
– The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
– When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
– Traffic is flowing normally.
– Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
– You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
– Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits





No alert is triggered in the following conditions:
– In the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.).
– Oncoming traffic.
– Driving on a winding road or a sharp corner.
– When overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) that is detected in the rear blind spot but is also present in the driver's front field of vision.
– When overtaking quickly.
– In very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Malfunction

If the event of malfunction, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.
This system is the combination of the Active Lane Departure Warning System and Blind Spot Monitoring System.
These two functions must be activated and in operation.
The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h) inclusive.
These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.
For more information on the **Active Lane Departure Warning System** and **Blind Spot Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding sections.

This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Distraction detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.
Take a break in case of feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.
Depending on version, the function consists of just the "Coffee Break Alert" system, or of this combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver’s responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Activation/Deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

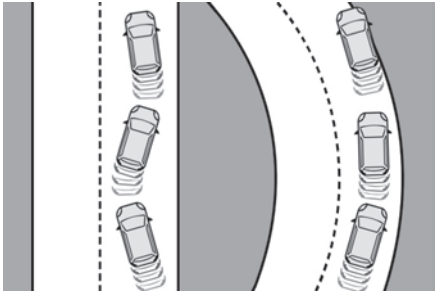
Coffee Break Alert

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
– engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
– the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
– the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Warning

Depending on version, the "Coffee Break Alert" system is combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance, fatigue or distraction by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).
At a first-level alert, the driver is warned by the "**Take care!**" message, accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

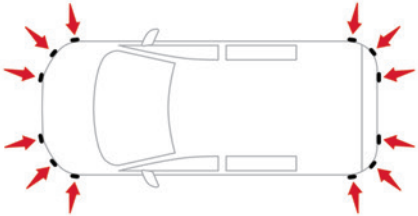
! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the road, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.);
– dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.);
– windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.);
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

i In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks),
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

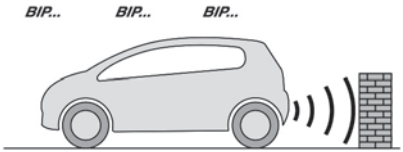


Using sensors located in the bumper, this system signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) present in their field of detection.

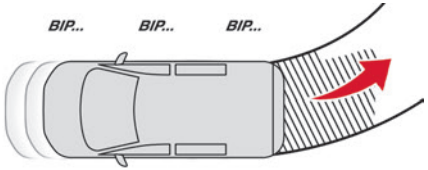
Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear, which is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when disengaging reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signalled by the audible assistance.
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Adjusting the audible signal
With CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav, pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audible signal.

Visual assistance

It supplements the audible assistance, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles, orange: close obstacles, red: very close obstacles).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

Side parking sensors

Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers, the system records the position of fixed obstacles during the manoeuvre and signals them when they are located by the sides of the vehicle.

Only fixed obstacles are signalled correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be signalled mistakenly, while moving obstacles which appear at the sides of the vehicle and which were not previously recorded will not be signalled.

The objects memorised during the manoeuvre will no longer be stored after switching off the ignition.

Deactivation / Activation

Without audio system

► To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **lit** when the system is **deactivated**.

With audio system or touch screen

The setting is done in the vehicle configuration menu.
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist function is measuring a space.
For more information on the **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

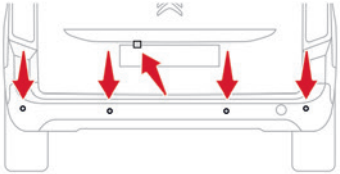
If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

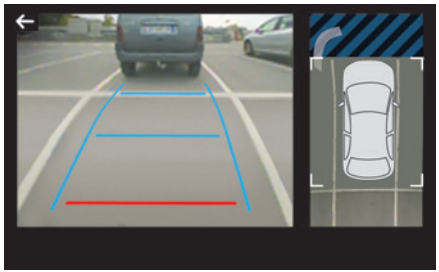
In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal (short beep).
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Top Rear Vision

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.

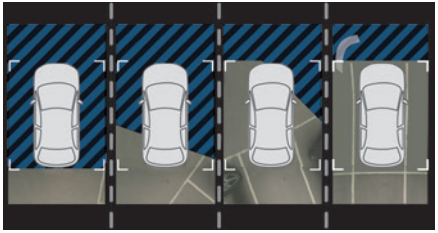


The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Various contextual views may be displayed:
– Standard view.

– 180° view.
– Zoom view.

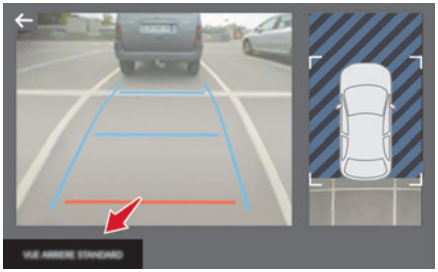
AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses to display the best view (standard or zoom).
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.
The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



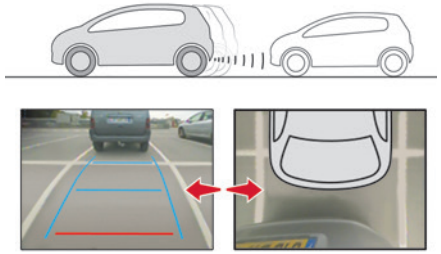
Using the rear camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

Rear vision



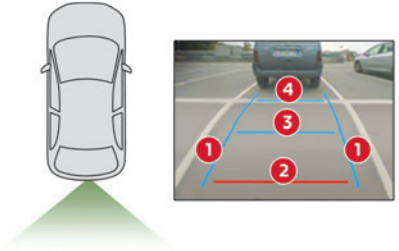
To activate the camera, located on the tailgate, engage reverse and keep the speed of the vehicle below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is deactivated:
– Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
– Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
– Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

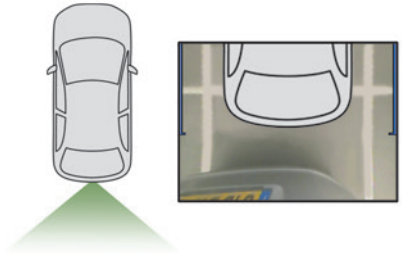
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

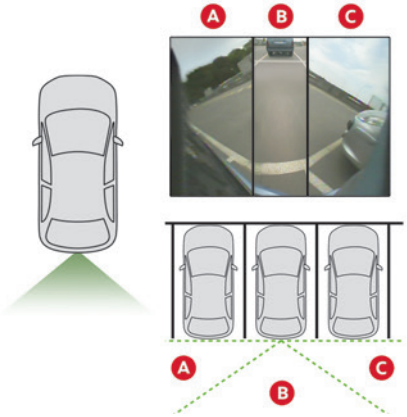
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

> Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
> It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
> The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view

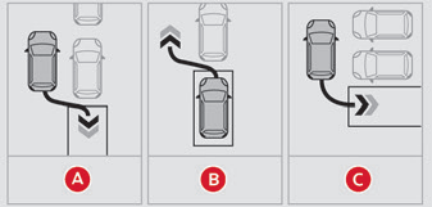


The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.
This system provides active parking assistance for vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in this space while the driver controls the driving direction, engagement of gears, acceleration and braking.
To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of Top Rear Vision and the activation of the parking sensors.
The system performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:

A. Entering a "parallel" parking space
B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space
C. Entering a "bay" parking space

Operation

► When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

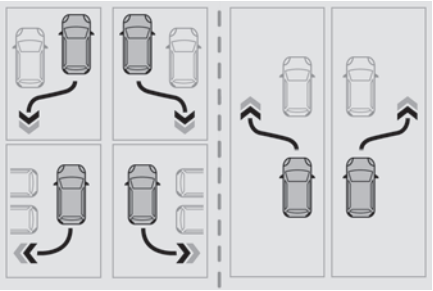
Activating the function

The function is activated via the vehicle configuration menu.

> **!** Activating the function deactivates the Blind Spot Monitoring System.

> **i** You can deactivate the function at any time until the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre begins, by pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.

► Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.

The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even while searching for an available space.

This indicator lamp comes on to confirm the selection.

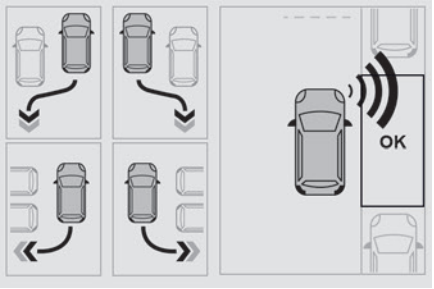
Parking space search

► You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.

The parking space search is suspended at higher speeds. The function is automatically deactivated if the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

> **i** For "parallel" parking, the space must measure at least the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
> For "bay" parking, the space must be at least as wide as your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

> **i** If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving**/**Vehicle** touch screen menu, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.



When the system finds an available space, "**OK**" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

► Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "**Stop the vehicle**",

accompanied by the “**STOP**” sign and an audible signal.
Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.
► To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instructions.
The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the "**Manoeuvre under way**" onscreen message and an accompanying audible signal.
Reversing is indicated by this message: “**Release the steering wheel, reverse**”.
The Top Rear Vision and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the area immediately surrounding your vehicle during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system controls the vehicle’s steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting "parallel" entry and exit parking manoeuvres, and for all "bay" entry manoeuvres.
There instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:

"Reverse".

“Go forwards".

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:

Manoeuvre in progress (green).

Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must resume control of the vehicle).
The maximum speeds during manoeuvres are indicated by these symbols:

7 5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.

5 3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any objects that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.). Risk of injury!
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor the traffic, especially vehicles coming towards you.
The driver should check that no objects or people are obstructing the vehicle’s path.

i The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the terrain.
In shady areas, or in inadequate sunlight or lighting conditions, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast

The manoeuvre can be permanently interrupted at any time, either by the driver or automatically by the system.

Interruption by the driver:
– taking over control of the steering.
– activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
– unfastening the driver's seat belt.
– switching off the ignition.
Interruption by the system:
– vehicle exceeding the speed limit of 5 mph (7 km/h) during parking space entry manoeuvres, or 3 mph (5 km/h) during parking space exit manoeuvres.
– activation of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
– opening of a door or the boot.
– engine stall.
– system malfunction.
– after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.
Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre cancelled**" message on the touch screen.
A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this warning lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.
When the function is deactivated, this indicator lamp goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.
When entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

– The system may suggest an unsuitable parking space (No Parking area, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which would not allow the vehicle to follow the necessary trajectory for parking.
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but not engage the manoeuvre because the road is too narrow.
– The system is not designed to perform the parking manoeuvre on a sharp bend.
– The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle or are bounded by obstacles that are very low (pavements, studs, etc.) or very thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
– Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
– Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
– A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
– If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.
The vehicle's sensors and camera(s) may be impaired by:
– accumulated snow or fallen leaves on the road,
– adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, falling snow),
– noise interference from noisy vehicles and machinery (lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.).

! Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
– Alongside a soft shoulder (e.g. ditch) or quay or on the edge of a drop.
– When the road surface is slippery (e.g. ice).

! If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– If a tyre is under-inflated.
– If one of the bumpers is damaged.
– If one of the cameras is faulty.

! If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the function:
– When carrying an object extending beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
– With a non-approved towball in place.
– With snow chains fitted.
– When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
– When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
– After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection).
– If the sensors have been repainted other than by the CITROËN dealer network.
– With sensors not approved for the vehicle.

Malfunctions

When the function is not activated, this indicator lamp will flash briefly and an audible signal will be emitted to indicate a system malfunction.
If the malfunction occurs while the system is in use, the warning lamp goes off.
If the parking sensor malfunction occurs during use, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, it causes the function to deactivate.
In the event of a malfunction, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

STOP In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

For more than 50 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them ever more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and performance of their products in motorsport under extreme conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants for maintaining your vehicle; they are your assurance of optimum engine life and performance.

Compatibility of fuels

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.
At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 61 litres (petrol) or 50 litres (Diesel).
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

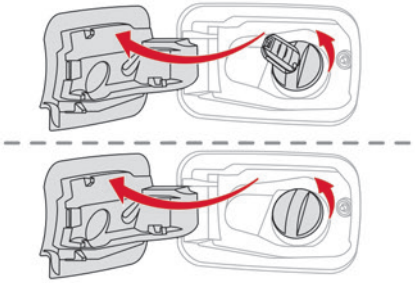
Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.
Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

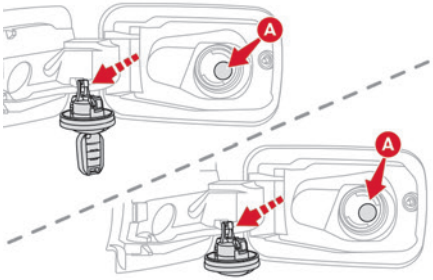
! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

At least 10 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:
► **Always switch off the engine.**
► Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting.
► Open the fuel filler flap.

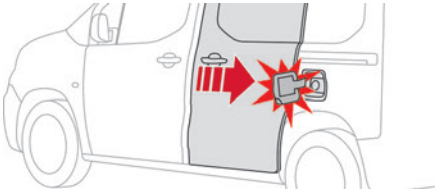


► With a conventional key, insert the key into the filler cap, then turn the key to the left.



► Unscrew and remove the filler cap, then place it on the holder located on the fuel filler flap.
► Insert the nozzle and push it in fully (while pushing on the metal valve **A**).
► Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.

► Put the filler cap back in place and close it by turning to the right.
► Push the fuel filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).



! If the fuel filler flap is open, a device prevents the left-hand side door from opening.
The door can be opened half-way, however. Close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

! **If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.**

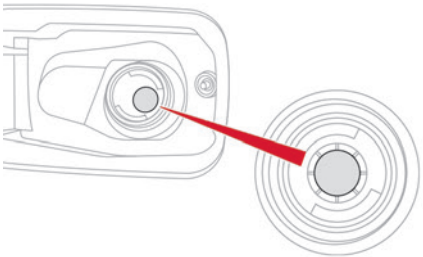
Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)
This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is inserted into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel jerrycan to fill the tank.

i **Travelling abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence

of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a CITROËN dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation specific to each country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Installation tips

► If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
► Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
► Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
► Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
► Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size (mm)
195/65 R15	9
205/60 R16	
205/55 R17	
215/65 R16	
215/60 R17	cannot be fitted with chains

You can also use snow socks.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing device

Load distribution

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.
Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their unmodified harnesses approved by CITROËN. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towing device is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towbar is used.

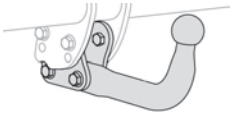
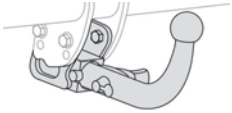
! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Towing devices

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be fitted with one of the following towing devices:

Approval No.: E1 R55 (reference 1)

		Mounting position then towing device reference	
Type of towing device		Towing device fixed at the **top**	Towing device fixed at the **bottom**
	Swan neck	– Standard swan neck L1 – Standard swan neck L2	– Cross (worksite) swan neck L1 – Cross (worksite) swan neck L2
	Quickly detachable towball	– Standard quickly detachable towball L1 – Standard quickly detachable towball L2	– Cross (worksite) quickly detachable towball L1 – Cross (worksite) quickly detachable towball L2

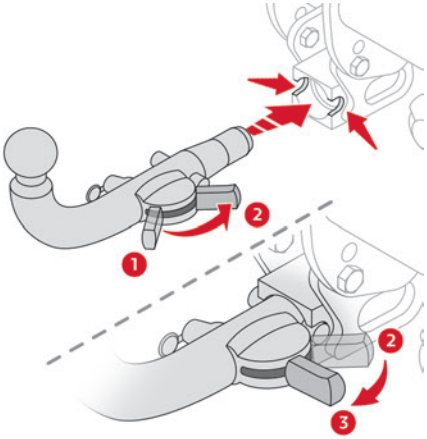
i For more information on your towing device, refer to the user guide supplied with it.

Towing device with quickly detachable towball

No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.

Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

Fitting



► On the towball, move the lever from position **1** to position **2**.
► Before fitting the towball, check that the contact points (shown by the arrows) are clean. Use a soft, clean cloth.
► Insert the end of the towball into the carrier, located underneath the rear bumper, as far as it can go.
► Secure the towball correctly by moving the lever to position **3** ("locked" position).
► If necessary, pivot the socket downwards, paying attention to the exhaust pipe.
► Connect the trailer plug to the 13-pin socket provided next to the carrier.
► Secure the trailer by connecting its safety cable to the eye on the carrier.

Removing

► On the towball, move the lever from position **3** to position **2**.
► Remove the towball by pulling it towards you.
► Once the towball has been removed, move the lever from position **2** to position **1**.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach. This may cause an accident.
Always lock the towball as described in the instructions.
Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Remove the towball when not in use.
Before starting the vehicle, check that the trailer lamps operate correctly.
Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.

Connect the trailer plug **with the engine off**.
If you connect the trailer plug within a few minutes of switching off the engine, **do not touch** the exhaust pipe. Risk of burns!

Carrier systems (box or bicycle carrier)
Always comply with the maximum load authorised on the towing device: if exceeded, the device may detach from the vehicle, potentially causing a serious accident.

For more information about the **Engine technical data and towed loads** and in particular, the maximum load on the towing device, refer to the corresponding section.

Remove the quickly detachable towball when not towing a trailer.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 40 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, the dipped beam headlamps, the courtesy lamps, etc.

Switching to the mode

A message indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode is displayed on the instrument panel screen and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes using your audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
– for less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes,
– for more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

System that manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Roof bars / Roof rack

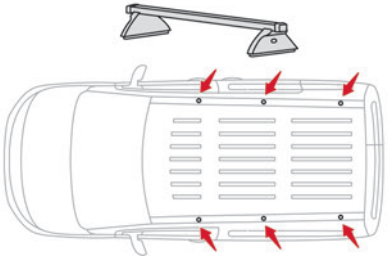
! **Recommendations**
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars and racks, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

! In the event of loading (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
– Transverse bars on longitudinal bars: **80 kg**.
– Two transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **150 kg**.
– An aluminium rack: **120 kg**.
– A steel rack: **115 kg**.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars or the roof rack and the fixings on the vehicle.
Refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

! In the event of loading a 7-seat model (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
– An aluminium rack: **70 kg**.
– A steel rack: **65 kg**.

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use

the roof bars and racks approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars and racks.



To fit the transverse roof bars or a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:
► Remove the fixing covers installed on the vehicle.
► Put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one.
► Ensure that the roof bars or the roof rack are correctly fitted (by shaking them).
The bars are adaptable for each fixing point.

Bonnet

Stop & Start
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

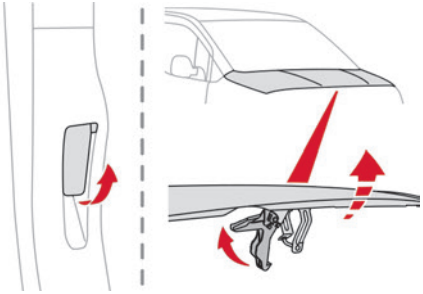
The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening the bonnet when the left-hand front door is closed.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

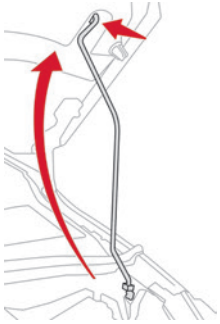
Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening

► Open the left-hand front door.



► Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.
► Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



► Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

► Take the stay out of the support slot.
► Clip the stay in its housing.

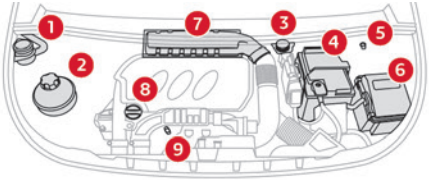
► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
► Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

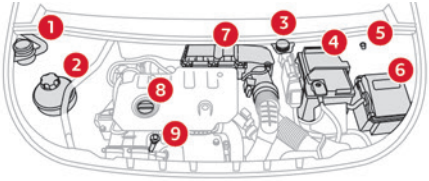
Engine compartment

The engine represented is an example given for illustration purposes only.
The locations of the following elements may vary:
– Air filter.
– Engine oil dipstick.
– Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery / Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil

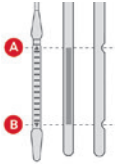
The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the

ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.
► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
► Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



► Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A** (max) and **B (min).**
Do not start the engine if the level is:
– above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

! **Oil grade**
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for the engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer and qualified workshops).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate the contractual warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.
► Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
► Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
► Add more oil if necessary.
► After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i During the 30 minutes after topping up the oil, the check performed with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pad wear.
To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! If topping up, clean the cap before replacing it. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed canister.

Engine coolant

Check the engine coolant level regularly.
It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.
The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.
The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top up.
When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap

and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.
Capacity of the tank:
– 5.3 litres for "very cold climate" versions.
– 2.2 litres for other versions.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a ready-to-use mixture.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid containing an agent to prevent freezing must be used which is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to protect the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, jets, etc.).

! Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

or in On reaching the minimum level the particle filter additive tank, this warning lamp comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible warning and a message warning that the additive level is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.
For more information on the **AdBlue** range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.
To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.
For more information on the **Supply of AdBlue**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.
However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)

When the particle filter is approaching saturation, this warning lamp comes on temporarily, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of filter clogging.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust while accelerating. This has no impact on the vehicle's behaviour or the environment.

New vehicle
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake

If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.
This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres

The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.
The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add

0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

! Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves. When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; it is imperative to replace the tyres.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR System

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.
The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.
Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 3,700 miles (6,000 km), (**which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style and the vehicle). An alert system is automatically triggered when the remaining range reaches 1,500 miles (2,400 km), i.e. once the reserve level has been reached.
Several alerts are triggered successively during the remaining 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle blocked.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: the vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. After 680 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting.
In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is stopped.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

! In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
– Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
– Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
– Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or in a qualified workshop.

You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for private vehicles.

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Storage recommendations

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out in the ambient air.

Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

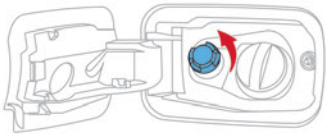
Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11 °C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

Never put the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
or
► With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "**START/STOP**" button to switch off the engine.



► With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank anti-clockwise and remove it.
► With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read carefully the instructions on the label before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.
► With an AdBlue® pump: introduce the nozzle and fill the tank until the automatic cut-off of the nozzle.

In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
– Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

– Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.

! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible" message – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

► Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it clockwise, as far as it will go.
► Close the fuel filler flap.

Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you purchased them.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, you must allow the vehicle to free-wheel (while being towed, on a rolling road, in an automatic car wash, or being transported by rail or sea freight, etc.).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

With a manual gearbox and electric parking brake

Release procedure

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, move the gear selector to the neutral position.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, start the engine.

With an automatic gearbox and electric parking brake

Release procedure

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, set the gear selector to **N**.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, start the engine.

Keyless Entry and Starting
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on or off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle.

Exterior

! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment, due to the risk of damaging electrical components.
Do not wash the vehicle in strong sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

When washing the vehicle at an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, remove the electronic key.
When using a pressure washer, hold the lance at least 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paint (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
If justified by the environment, clean the vehicle more frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial estates) and mud (in wet or cold areas).
These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if you require advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure washer to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage if they come into contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console.
Take care!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

Use a soft sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

Do not use a high pressure washer to clean the vehicle. Risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Use a high-flow hose at a temperature between 25°C and 40°C.
Sweep the jet of water across the surface to be cleaned, perpendicular to it.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

> For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1)

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
► Repeat the operation 10 times.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2/6.3)

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Non-BlueHDi engines

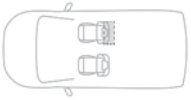
► Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
► Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (resistance may be felt at the first press).
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
► If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.
► Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

Tool kit

► For easier access, move the seat(s) forward.

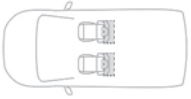
Accessing the tools

With a temporary puncture repair kit



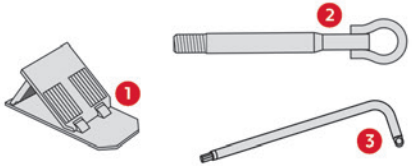
The kit is located under the right-hand front seat.

With spare wheel



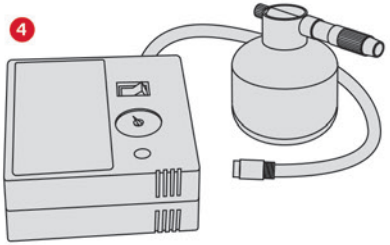
The jack is located under the right-hand front seat.
The tools are located under the left-hand front seat.

Description of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle.
2. Removable towing eye.
3. Torx key.
   Allows the removal of the rear lamps in order to change a bulb.

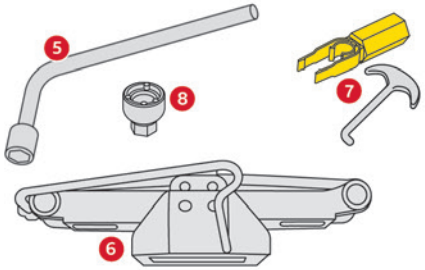
With a temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with a cartridge of sealant and a speed limit sticker
   For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
6. Jack.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tool (depending on equipment).
   If present on the vehicle, used to remove the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
8. Socket for the “security” wheel bolts.
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, please refer to the corresponding section.

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

Certain parts of the jack such as the screw thread or the joints could cause injury: avoid touching them.
Carefully remove all traces of lubrication grease.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Repair procedure

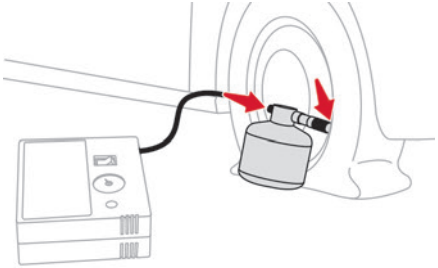
Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.

► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility

vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country of driving.

► Switch off the ignition.

► Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



► Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

► Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".

► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.

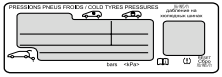
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to **power the compressor**.

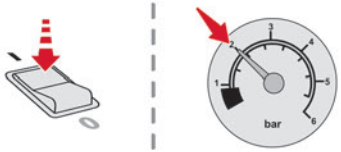
► Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind the driver that a wheel is in temporary use.

i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



► Switch on the ignition.



► Switch on the compressor by moving switch to position "**I**" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bars is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Move the switch to position "**O**".

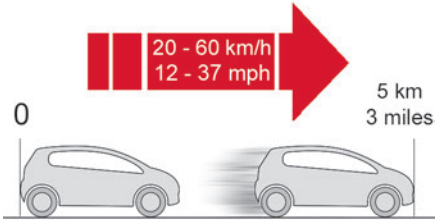
► Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.

► Refit the cap on the valve.

► Remove the kit.

► Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



► Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.

► Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

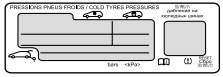
Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

► Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
► Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Switch on the ignition.

! Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to **power the compressor**.

i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



► Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bars is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is damaged; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
► Remove the kit and stow it.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

► Park the vehicle, taking care to avoid obstructing traffic, and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
► Switch off the ignition.

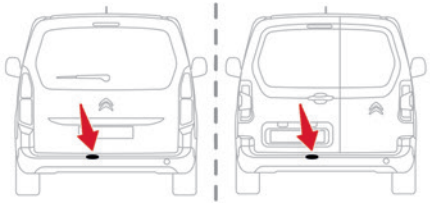
Access to the spare wheel

► Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.

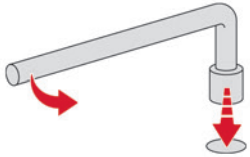
► If your vehicle is fitted with a towbar, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

Removing the spare wheel from the carrier

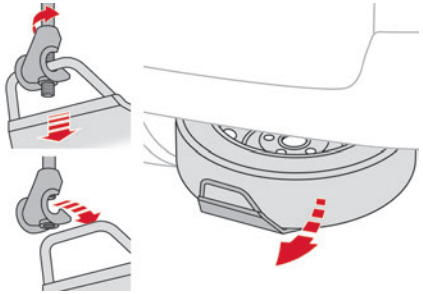
► Depending on version, open the tailgate or side-hinged doors.



► Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.

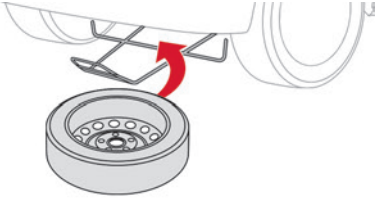


► Slacken the bolt using the wheelbrace until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.



► Release the carrier from the hook and place the spare wheel next to the wheel to be changed.

Putting the spare wheel back in the carrier



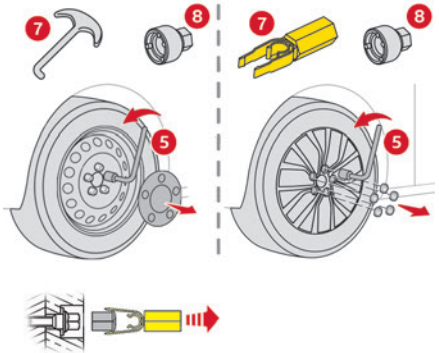
► Position the wheel facing the carrier.
► Progressively return the wheel to the carrier by pushing alternately at left and right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.
► Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace handle until the bolt is tight.

Removing a wheel

Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

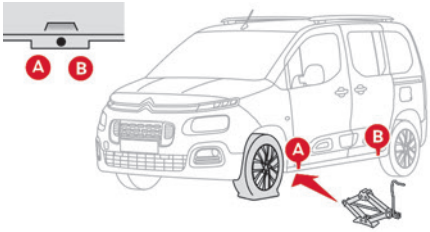
Check for the fixed illumination of the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

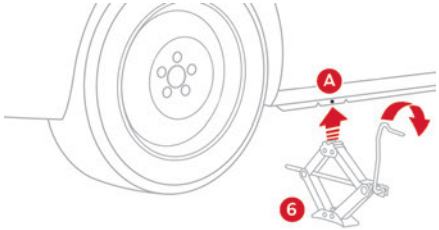


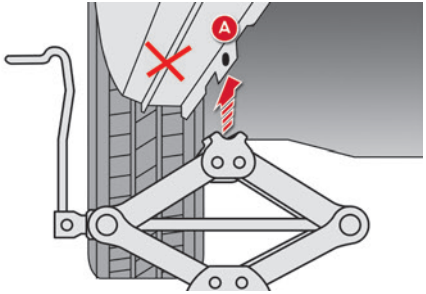
► With a steel wheel, remove the wheel trim using tool **7**.
► With an alloy wheel, remove the cap from each of the bolts using tool **7**.
► If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **8** to wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
► **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **5**.

Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.



► Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

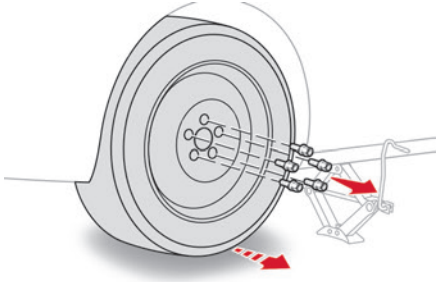




► Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact surface **A** or **B** of the vehicle must be correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
► Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

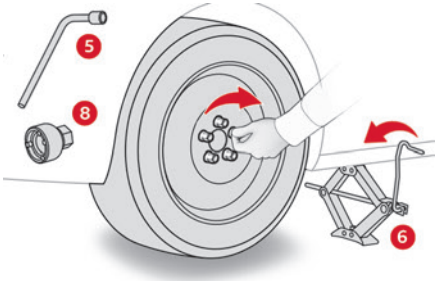
! Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse.

Ensure that the jack is positioned strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing.

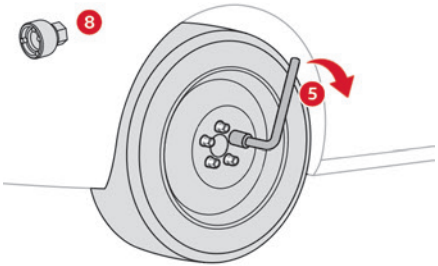


► Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
► Remove the wheel.

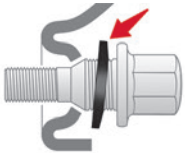
Fitting a wheel



► Fit the wheel on the hub.
► Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
► Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **8**.
► Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
► Lower the vehicle again fully.
► Fold jack **6** and remove it.



► If your vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **8**.
► Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
► Store the tools.



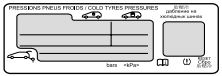
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel
If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheels, the washers do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel
Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Some driving aid functions should be disabled, e.g. the Active Safety Brake.

If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheel with wheel trim
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by aligning the cutout with the valve and then pushing the trim into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

Changing a bulb

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
► **do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products,**
► use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
► when using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification.

! **Opening the bonnet / Accessing the bulbs**
With the engine warm, proceed with caution - risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

i **Halogen bulbs (Hx)**
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

! **After changing a bulb**
To refit, carry out the fitting operations in reverse order.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps / lamps are:
– Daytime running lamps / sidelamps.

! For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Types of bulb

Various types of bulb are fitted on the vehicle. To remove them:

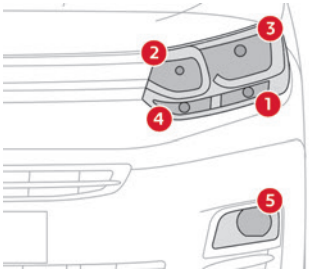
Type A All-glass bulb: pull gently as it is fitted by pressure.
Type B Bayonet bulb: press on the bulb then turn it anti-clockwise.
Type C Halogen bulb: release the retaining spring from its housing.
Type D Halogen bulb: turn the bulb anti-clockwise.

i When each operation has been completed, check the operation of the lighting.

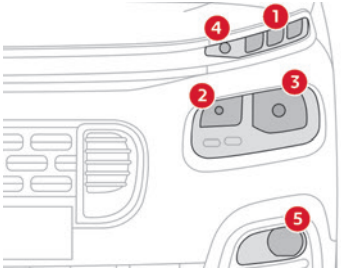
Front lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

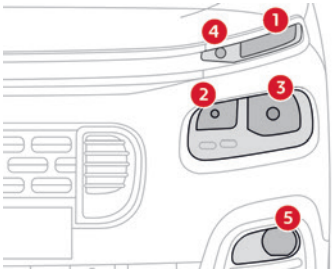
Model A



Model B



Model C



1. Sidelamps / Daytime running lamps.
   Type A, W21/5W or LED (depending on version)
2. Main beam headlamps.
   Type C, H1
3. Dipped beam headlamps.
   Type C, H7
4. Direction indicator.
   Type B, PY21W
5. Foglamp.
   Type D, H11

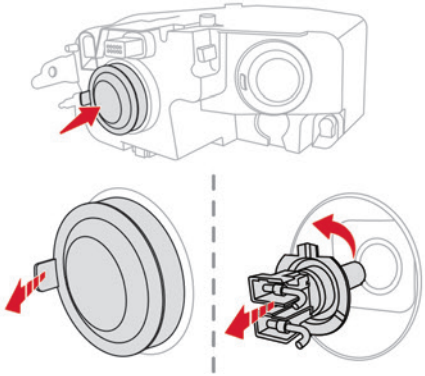
Direction indicator side repeater

Type A, WY5W-5W (amber)

– Push the repeater towards the rear and release it.
– When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then bring it back towards the rear.
Amber-coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

Dipped beam headlamps

Type C, H7



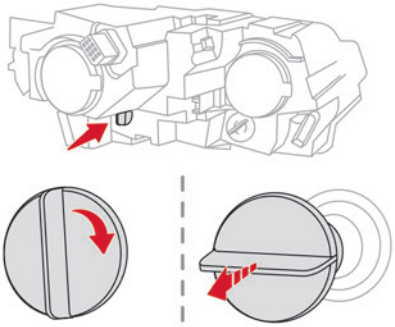
► Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
► Turn the unit in relation to the support.
► Pull the bulb connector.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

> ℹ Take care to reposition the protective cover while keeping the tab accessible.

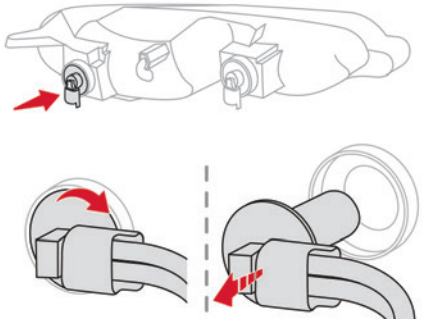
Sidelamps / Daytime running lamps (models A and C)

Type A, W21/5W

Model A



Model C



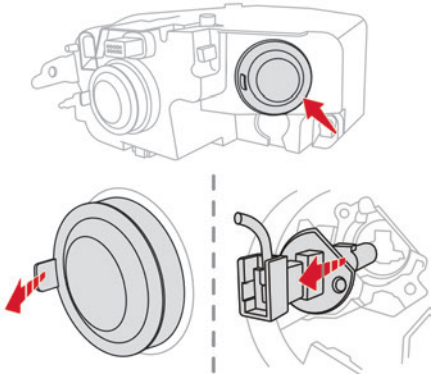
► Turn the connector a quarter turn clockwise.
► Pull the bulb connector.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

Sidelamps / Daytime running lamps (model B)

> ! **Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)**
> For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Main beam headlamps

Type C, H1



► Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
► Unclip the unit in relation to the support.
► Pull the bulb connector.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

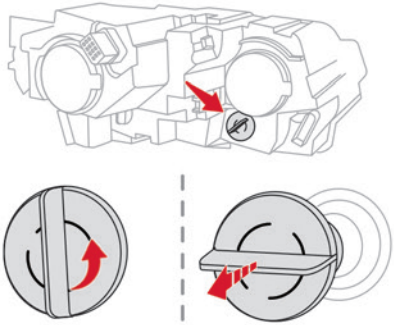
> ℹ Take care to reposition the protective cover while keeping the tab accessible.

Direction indicators

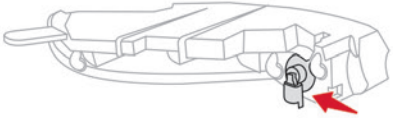
Type B, PY21W

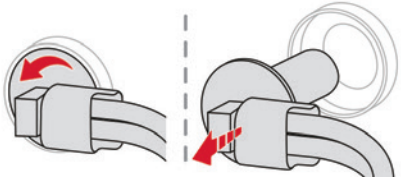
Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

Model A



Model B and C



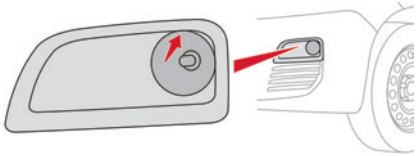


► Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Pull the unit in relation to the support.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

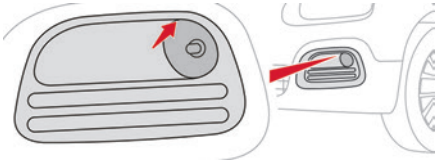
Front foglamps

Type D, H11

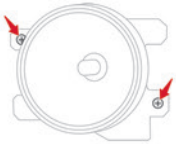
Model A



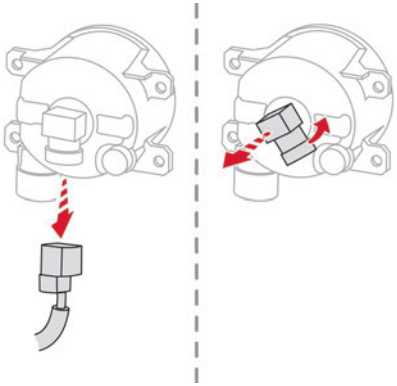
Models B and C



► Insert a flat screwdriver between the lamp and the cover.
► Pull and lever to unclip the cover.



► Remove the two fastening screws of the module.
► Remove the module from its housing.



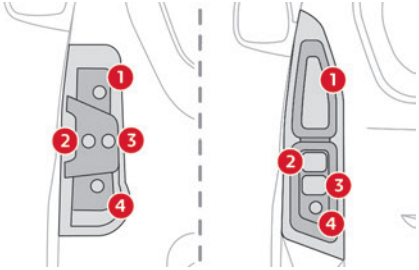
► Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.
► Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Remove the bulb holder.
► Replace the faulty bulb.

i To replace these bulbs, it is possible to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

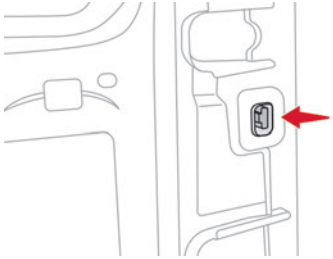
Rear lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

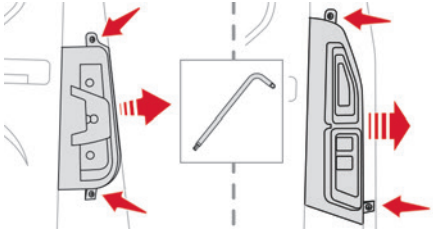
With side-hinged doors/tailgate



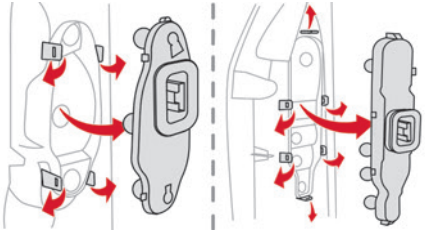
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps.
   Type B, P21/5W
2. Direction indicators.
   Type B, PY21W (amber)
3. Reversing lamps.
   Type B, P21W
4. Foglamps.
   Type B, P21W



► From the inside, disconnect the electrical connector at the rear of the lamps.



► Remove the two fixing bolts using the Torx key provided in your vehicle.
For more information on the **Tool kit**, please refer to the corresponding section.
► From the outside, pull the whole lamp unit towards you (with **side-hinged doors**) or towards the centre of the vehicle (with **tailgate**).



► Open the tabs, then pull out the lamp holder.
► Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it while turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Replace the bulb.

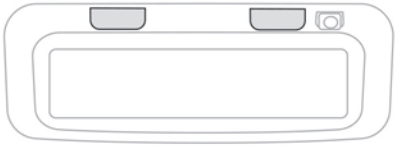
i Take care to reposition the tabs and the wiring correctly to avoid trapping the wire.

i After changing a rear direction indicator bulb, the reinitialisation time is approximately 2 minutes or more.

Number plate lamps

Type A, W5W - 5W

With side-hinged doors



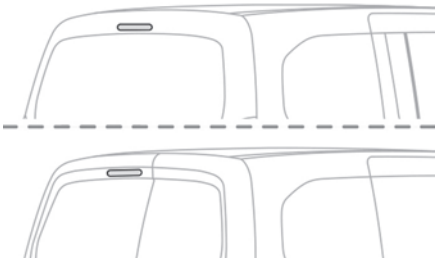
► Unclip the interior trim.
► Disconnect the connector by moving aside its tab.
► Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Change the bulb.
► Put the bulb holder back in place and reconnect the connector.
► Put the trim back in place.

With tailgate

► Remove the plastic lens using a screwdriver.
► Change the bulb.
► Refit the plastic lens and press on it.

Third brake lamp

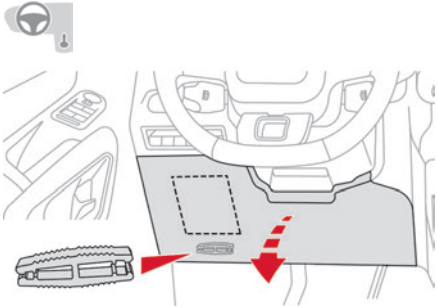
Type A, W16W - 16W

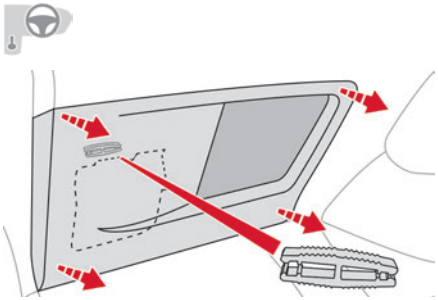


– Unscrew the two nuts.
– Push the rods.
– If necessary, disconnect the connector to remove the lamp.
– Replace the bulb.

Changing a fuse

Accessing the tools





The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.
► Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
► Remove the cover completely.
► Take the tweezers from their housing.

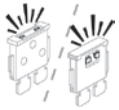
Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:
► Identify the cause of the fault and fix it.
► Stop all power consumption.
► Immobilise the vehicle and switch the ignition off.
► Identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.
To replace a fuse, it is essential to:
► Use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
► Always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions - risk of fire!
If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a CITROËN dealer or from a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious

malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

	
Good	**Failed**
Tweezers	

Installing electrical accessories
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

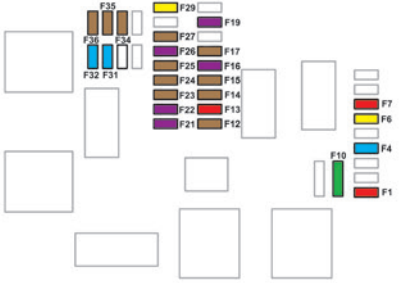
For more information on installing a towbar or TAXI type equipment, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses

► Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in your vehicle.



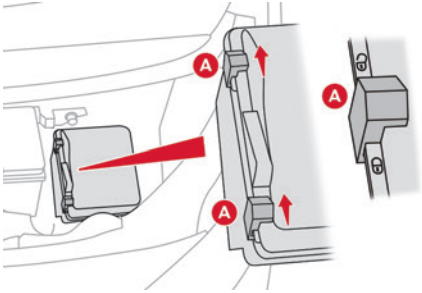
Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10	Wireless smartphone charger, interior electrochrome rear view mirror.
F4	15	Horn.
F6	20	Screenwash pump.
F7	10	12 V socket (rear).
F10	30	Electric locks module.
F13	10	Telematics and radio controls.
F14	5	Alarm, advanced telematic unit.
F19	3	Trailer interface unit.
F23	5	Generic trailer interface unit.
F27	5	Additional heating.
F29	20	Audio system, touch screen.
F31	15	Audio system (as an accessory).
F32	15	12 V socket (front).

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F34	5	Mirror control.
F36	5	USB port.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



► Release the two latches **A**.
► Remove the cover.
► Change the fuse.
► When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F16	15	Front foglamp.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F29	40	Windscreen wipers.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

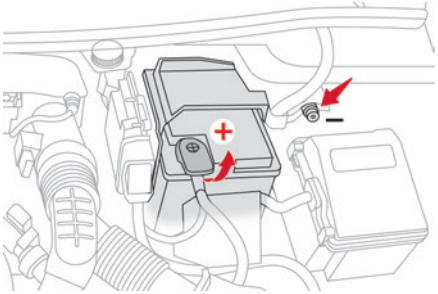
Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
It should only be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.
► Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
► Secure the bonnet stay.



The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.
There is a remote earth point near the battery.

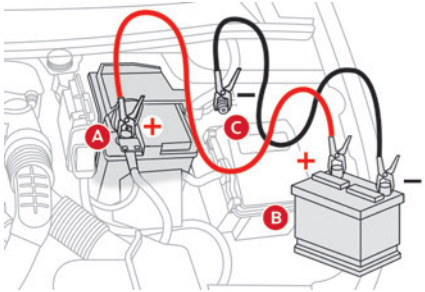
For more information on the **Bonnet** and the **Engine**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to the moving parts of the engine (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
► Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

To disconnect, proceed in reverse order.

Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

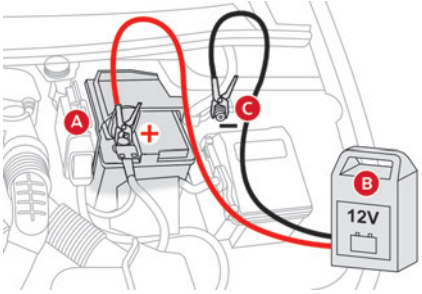
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– using the vehicle mainly for short journeys;
– if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

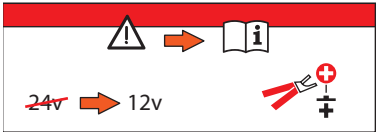
► Switch off the ignition.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.

► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

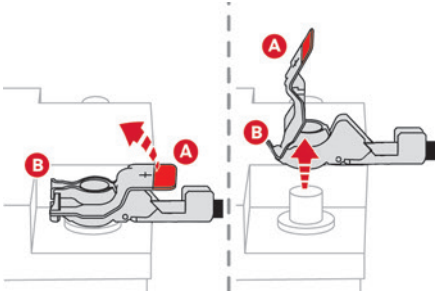
! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the battery:
► close all doors, windows and the tailgate and sunroof,
► switch off all electricity consuming devices (audio system, wipers, headlamps, etc.),
► switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.
At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

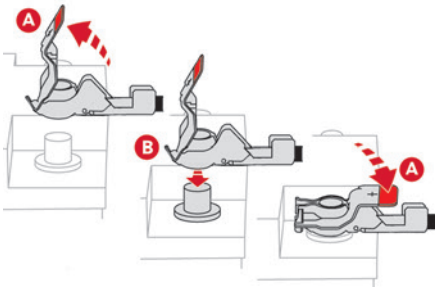
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
► Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise the lever **A** fully.
► Replace the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
► Push the clamp **B** fully down.
► Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as it will not be possible to lock the clamp if it is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must reset certain systems yourself, such as:

– the remote control key or the electronic key (depending on version),
– the electric windows,
– the electric doors,
– the date and time,
– the radio preset stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

i **General recommendations**
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

! **A professional recovery service must be called if:**
– broken down on a motorway or main road;
– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;

– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine / gearbox)gearbox	**Font wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion / Manual	✓	✓	✓	✓
Internal combustion / Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗

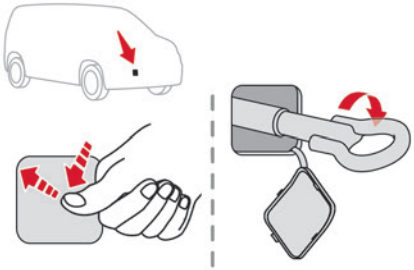
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Access to the eye

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

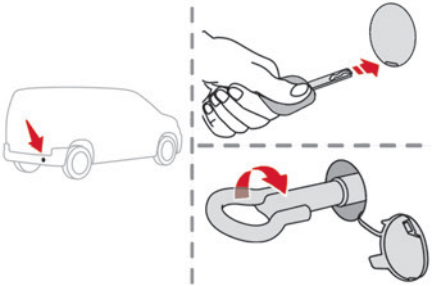
With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing your vehicle



► In the front bumper, slide a finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

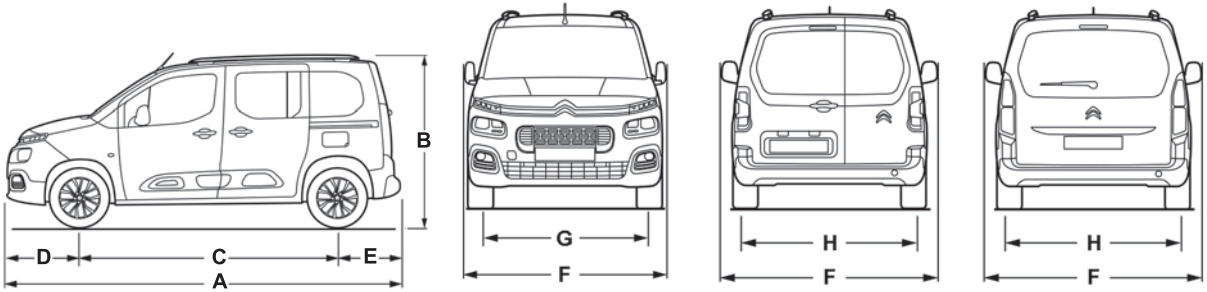
Towing another vehicle



► In the rear bumper, place the key in the notch located under the flap.
► Turn the key and then open the flap.
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.
The vehicle is available in two lengths (M and XL).
The height may vary, depending on wheel diameters.



			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	XL (L2)
A	Overall length		4,403	4,753
B	Overall height	Without roof bars	1,800 to 1,807	1,812 to 1,818
		With roof bars	1,837 to 1,844	1,843 to 1,849
C	Wheelbase		2,785	2,975
D	Front overhang		892	
E	Rear overhang		726	886
F	Width inc. mirrors	Folded	1,921	
		Unfolded	2,107	
G	Front track width		1,553	

		Vehicle length	
		M (L1)	XL (L2)
H	Rear track width	1,567	

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

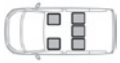
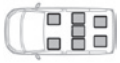
Engines and towed loads - PETROL

Vehicles fitted with the **VTi 110 BVM5** engine are not suitable for towing.

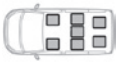
Engines and towed loads - PETROL EURO 6.3

Engine			PureTech 110 S&S BVM6		PureTech 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearbox			Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code			EB2ADT MB6 STTD		EB2ADTS ATN8 STTD	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats				ERHNSR-A	ERHNSR-C
	7 seats				ERHNSR-B	ERHNSR-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			81		96	
Fuel			Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		1,150	1,100	1,200	1,150
	7 seats		1,000	900 / 950	1,050	1 000 / 950
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		720 / 730	750	740 / 750	750
	7 seats		750		750	
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	5 seats		74	74	74	74
	7 seats		50 / 70	50	70 / 50	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL

Engine			HDi 75 BVM5	HDi 92 S&S BVM5	
Gearbox			Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed	
Code			DV6E BE	DV6D BE	
Length			M (L1)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		EC9HNA-A	EC9HPA-A	EC9HPA-C
	7 seats		/	EC9HPA-B	EC9HPA-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,560	1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			55	68	
Fuel			Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		1,000	1,100	1,050
	7 seats		/	950	900
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		720	720	750
	7 seats		/	750	
Maximum authorised nose/ towball weight (kg)	5 seats		74	74	74
	7 seats		/	70	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.1

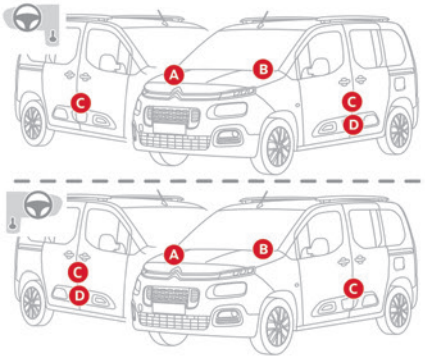
Engine			BlueHDi 75 BVM5	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5	
Gearbox			Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed	
Code			DV6FE BE	DV6FD BE STTD	
Length			M (L1)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	5 seats		ECBHWB-A	ECBHYB-A	ECBHYB-C
	7 seats		/	ECBHYB-B	ECBHYB-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,560	1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			55	73	
Fuel			Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	5 seats		1,000	1,100	1,050
	7 seats		/	950	900
Unbraked trailer (kg)	5 seats		730	730	750
	7 seats		/	750	
Maximum authorised nose/ towball weight (kg)	5 seats		74	74	74
	7 seats		/	70	50

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL EURO 6.2 and 6.3

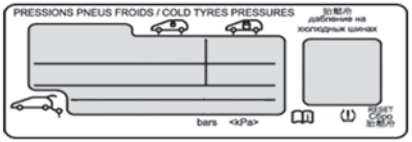
Engine			**BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5**		**BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8**	
Gearbox			**Manual 5-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code			DV5RD BE STTD - TBC		DV5RC ML6 STTD		DV5RC ATN8 STTD	
Length			M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)	M (L1)	XL (L2)
Model Code	**5 seats**		ECYHYC-A	ECYHYC-C	ECYHZJ-A	ECYHZJ-C	ECYHZR-A	ECYHZR-C
	7 seats		ECYHYC-B	ECYHYC-D	ECYHZJ-B	ECYHZJ-D	ECYHZR-B	ECYHZR-D
Cubic capacity (cc)			1,499		1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)			75		96		96	
Fuel			Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	**5 seats**		1,300	1,250	1,500	1,450	1,300	1 225 / 1 250
	7 seats		1,150	1,050 / 1,100	1,350	1,250	1,100 / 1,150	1,050 / 1,100
Unbraked trailer (kg)	**5 seats**		740 / 750	750	750	750	750	750
	7 seats		750					
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	**5 seats**		74	74	74	74	52	74
	7 seats		60	50 / 60	55 / 60	50	50	50

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



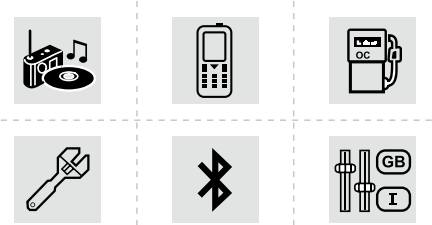
A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.
Stamped on the chassis, near the right-hand front wheel arch.
B. Vehicle identification number (VIN), on the dashboard.
On a label, visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Fixed on the centre pillar, left-hand side or right-hand side.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer’s name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle identification number (VIN).
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).
– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.
D. Tyres / paint code label.



Fixed at the driver-side door.
Bears the following information about the tyres:
– tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
– tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– spare tyre inflation pressure.
Also indicates the paint colour code.

> i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).

Bluetooth® audio system



The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps

Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC / Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).

Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activate/Deactivate automatic volume adjustment (based on the vehicle's speed).

LIST **Radio :**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media :
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Select the screen display mode, between: Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK Confirm or display contextual menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Radio:
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

▲ ▼ **Radio:**
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Cancel the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU Access the main menu.

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC / **Other than telephone call:**
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU Access to the main menu.

\+ Increase volume.

Mute / Restore the sound.

– Decrease volume.

SRC / **Other than telephone call:**
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.

"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Trip computer**".

"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.

"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

▲ ▼ Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.

To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

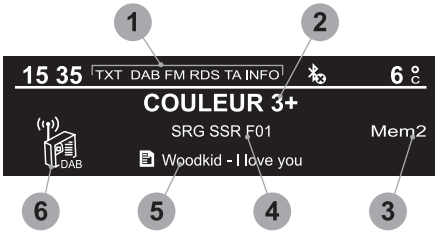
▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Depending on version

If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
2 Display showing the name of the current station.
3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.
4 Display showing the name of the “multiplex” service being used.
5 RadioText (TXT) display for the current radio station.
6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

When changing region, updating the list of preset radio stations is recommended.

LIST Full list of radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex / ensemble” services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex / ensemble".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex / ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen , press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB / FM station tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

▲ ▼ Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
– **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
– **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
– **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
– **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.

▲ ▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".
Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.

Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list.
Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

Input AUX socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

> Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".
First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Controls are managed via the portable device.

> Do not connect the same device to both the auxiliary jack socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

> External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

> On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.
> However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
> The folder structure is not observed during playback.
> All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.
Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE.**

In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.
If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.
The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with “.mp3”, “.wma”, “.wav” and “.aac” file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
No other file types (“.mp”4, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.
Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3”, “.wma”, “.wav”, “.cbr”, “.vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (“.mp4”, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.
File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.
In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.
In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Select "Bluetooth **Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
– 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
– 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates connection of the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Then select and confirm:

– "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**" : to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
– "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**" : to connect / disconnect streaming only.
– "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**" : to

connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
– "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

i When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.
Select "**Call**".
Select "**Dial**".
Or
Select "**Directory**".
Or
Select "**Calls list**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.
Select "**End call**".
Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

i The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:

– select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
– deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Telephone mode

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:

– select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
– deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Consultation call

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Directory

▲ ▼ To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.

Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

– "**Consult an entry**",
– "**Delete an entry**",
– "**Delete all entries**".

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to avoid discharging the vehicle's battery.

► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The message "the audio system is overheated" is displayed onscreen.

To protect the installation if the ambient temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode, in which the volume may be decreased or the CD player stopped.

► Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).

For optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adjusted to different audio sources, resulting in audible differences when switching between sources (radio, CD, etc.).

► Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are appropriate to the sources being listened to. We recommend setting the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re

balance and Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in CD mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The wrong waveband is selected.

► Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.

Traffic announcement (TA) is shown but I receive no traffic information.

The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.

► Tune to a radio station that broadcasts traffic information.

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are inoperative (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the RDS function to allow the system to check for a more powerful transmitter in the area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The sound intermittently cuts out for 1 or 2 seconds in radio mode.

During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.

► Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon occurs too frequently and always on the same route.

Media

The Bluetooth connection is cut.

The battery in the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.

► Charge the battery in the peripheral device.

The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.

The USB stick has not been recognised, or may be corrupted.

► Reformat the USB memory stick.

The CD is systematically ejected or is not played.

The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system.

The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.

► Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.

► Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.

► Check the content in the case of a burned CD: read the recommendations in the "Audio" section.

Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.

The CD audio quality is is poor.

The CD is scratched or of poor quality.

► Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.

The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.

► Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.

I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.

Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.

► Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

I am unable to access my voicemail.

Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.

► Call your voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.

I am unable to access my directory of contacts.

► Check the compatibility of your telephone.

You did not grant access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.

► Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.

I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.

Handset mode is activated.

► Deselect handset mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.

I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.

Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specificities in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.

► Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the telephone pairing from the system **and** the system pairing from the telephone, in order to view the compatibility of the telephones.

CITROËN Connect Radio

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

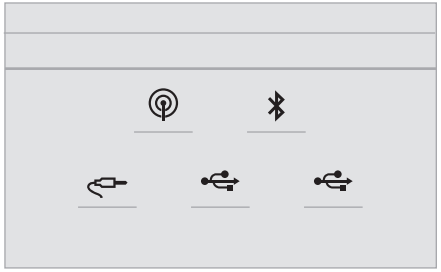
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.
Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
– Privacy status information.
– Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB Memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.

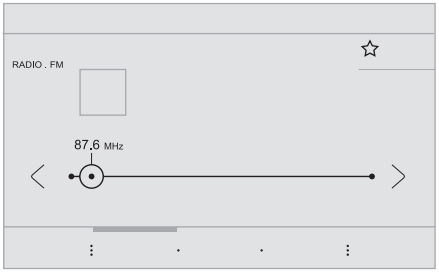
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Applications

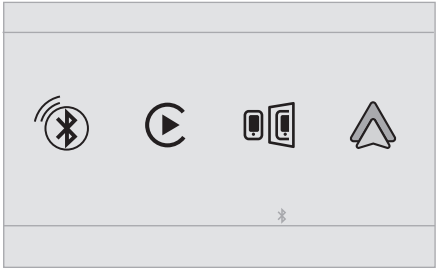
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



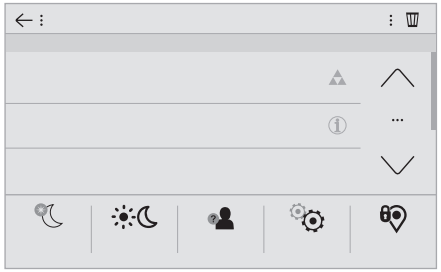
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



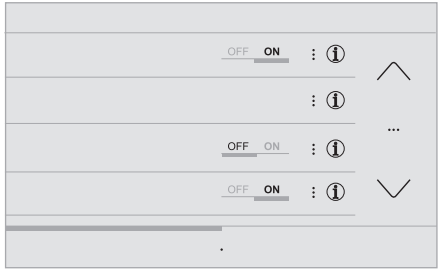
Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.
Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings



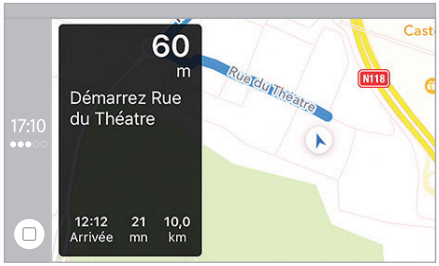
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving



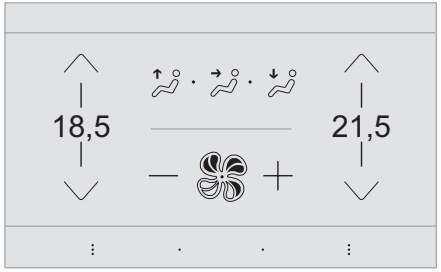
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> ! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz KHz Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
FM Press "**Band**" to change waveband.
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or
Select a radio station or frequency.
Press "**Preset**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**News**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**TA**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Audio settings**".

Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the country.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**SOURCES**" button.
Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand.
For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed, showing the applications already downloaded to the smartphone that are compatible with MirrorLink™ technology.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press the "Details" button for a paired device.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.
And

+2s Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.
Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

+2s

the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".
Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

+2s

the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".
Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.

Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.
Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".
Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).
Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".
Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".
Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
Select "**Language**" to change the language.
Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".
Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).
Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).
Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".
Press this button to set the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format for the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).
The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.
► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.
This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.
The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).
► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.
► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.
Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.
► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).
► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.
► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options.
Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.
► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.
When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

CITROËN Connect Nav

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).
– Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle.
The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available on the website.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

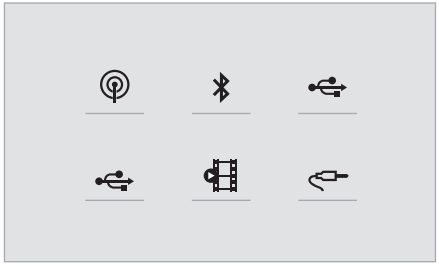
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
– Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
– Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
– Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice control for smartphone or CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (availability depending on country), Android Auto via the system.

\+ Increase volume.

– Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

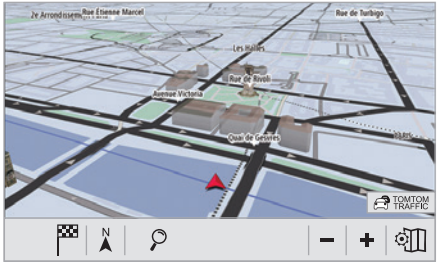
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

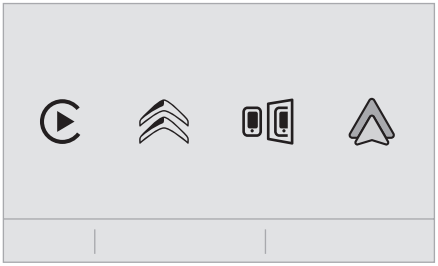
Menus

Connected navigation



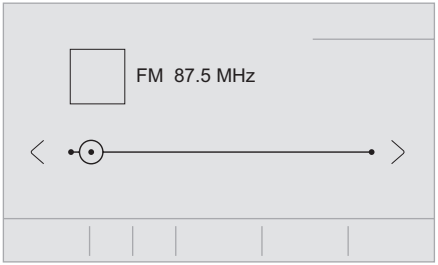
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications



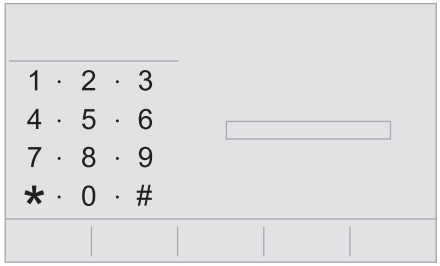
Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available in some countries) or Android Auto. Check the status of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



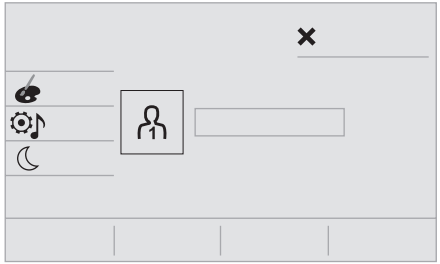
Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings

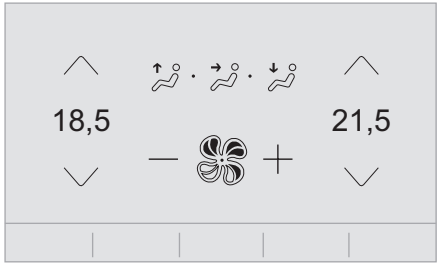


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
– always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
– for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
– before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps

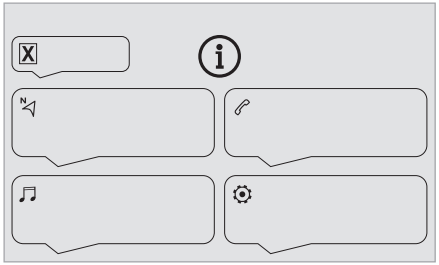
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller"

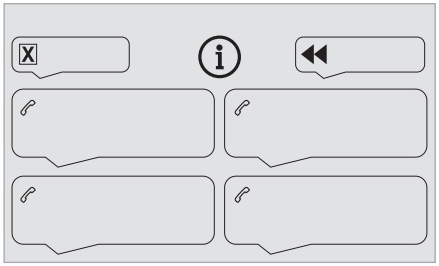
! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by

step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert
Select user 1 / Select profile John
Increase temperature
Decrease temperature

Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands

Voice commands

Navigate home
Navigate to work
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club
Navigate to contact, John Miller
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London

Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance
Tell me the remaining time
Tell me the arrival time
Stop route guidance

Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".

Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination
Show nearby POI petrol station
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route

Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...

Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".

Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2
Tune to 98.5 FM
Tune to preset number five

Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".

Voice commands

What's playing?

Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude
Play artist Madonna
Play album Thriller

Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

Voice commands

Call David Miller*
Call voicemail*
Display calls*

Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.

Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late

Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me

Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*

Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press "**Search...**".

Enter an address or key words for your destination.

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

Before you can use the navigation feature, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), and the "**Number**" on the virtual keypad, or select an

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

If you do not confirm the house number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Then

Select the **Country**

Select the keyboard “language”.

Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**” tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**”.

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**” tab.

Select "**Home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**” tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**” tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:

You can only select this method in order to use the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use the Citroën Connect Box solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Search**".
Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change "Database".
Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).
Press the back arrow to confirm.
Enter an address or key words for your destination (POI).
Press "**OK**" to start the search.
Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.
Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Select the destination by pressing on the map.
Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.

A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.
Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.
Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.
A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.
Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.
OR
Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.
And
Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable

legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

If you use the Citroën Connect Box solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user

For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Brand's national website.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection

Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

WIFI Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:
– With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.
– With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only available with a USB connection.
The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System configuration**".

Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR

Press "**Notifications**".

Press "**Private mode**".

THEN

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Sharing data and vehicle position**"

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select the "**Map**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
– "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
– "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".

These settings must be configured for each profile.

OK Press "**OK" to confirm your selection.**

Select the "**Alerts**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**Advise of car park nearby**".
– "**Filling station alert**".
– "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure alerts.
– "**Give an audible warning**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".

OK Press "**OK" to confirm your selection.**

The "Notifications", in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
– Weather,
– Filling stations,
– Car park,
– Traffic,
– POI local search.
A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"

To send information about danger zones, select the option:**Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".

Select the "**"Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired fuel.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired connector type.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying weather information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display basic information.

Press this button to display detailed weather information.

> The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB ports

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB ports compatible with **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

> For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Brand's national website.

> Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's MirrorLinkCarPlay®, ™ or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone.
> In all cases, the smartphone must be unlocked, to enable the communication process between the smartphone and the system to function.
> As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

The "**MirrorLink**™" function requires a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.
You can check that your telephone is compatible on the Brand's website (services).

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "MirrorLink™" function.

Press "**MirrorLink**™" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink**™" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.
Once the connection is established, a page is displayed, showing the applications already downloaded to the smartphone that are compatible with MirrorLink™ technology.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".
The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.

Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.

Select the country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search**".

The list of detected smartphones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

Depending on the type of smartphone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:

– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),

– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),

– "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad , enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.

And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

To change the waveband, press "Band…", displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.

The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press “Band …" at the top right of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

“DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor, “FM-DAB auto follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**".

If “FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume.

When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on “FM” (“**FM-DAB**" option shaded), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/Depending on country.
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

i Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select **Video** to start the video.

To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.
The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

i Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

i The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all” (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

i If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press "**Bluetooth search**".
Or
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– “**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

i The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press the "Details" button.

Select one or more profiles.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).

Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).

Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.

Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Press " **Play**" to listen to the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.

Press "**Create**" to write a new message.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.

Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiences) and the **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".

The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate:**Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.

! Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format for the date.

i Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.
The address is not recognised.
► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search…" button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.
The route calculation is not successful.
The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).
► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
I do not receive "Danger zone" alerts.
You have not subscribed to the online services option.
► If you have subscribed to the option:
- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).
The POIs do not appear.
The POIs have not been selected.
► Set the zoom level to 600 ft (200 m) or select POIs in the POI list.
The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.
The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.
► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.
The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.
► Configure the "Traffic info " function in the route settings list (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a warning about a "Danger area" that is not on my route.
As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.
► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.
On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.
► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).
In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.
This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.
On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.
► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.
This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.
During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.
► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).
The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.
► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).
► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.
This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.
Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.
► Press the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).
► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.
The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.
This is perfectly normal.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
► Deactivate then reactivate the telphone's Bluetooth function.
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► You can check that your telephone is compatible on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.
The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.
► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.
SMS text messages cannot be sent to the system in Bluetooth mode.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.
► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.
► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.
When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.
Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.
► Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

A

ABS ... 73
Accessories ... 69, 96
Access to the 3rd row ... 43
Access to the spare wheel ... 158–159
Active Safety Brake ... 122–123
AdBlue® ... 151
AdBlue® tank ... 152
Additive, Diesel ... 149–150
Adjusting headlamps ... 65
Adjusting head restraints ... 45
Adjusting seat ... 38, 43
Adjusting the air distribution ... 53–54
Adjusting the air flow ... 53–54
Adjusting the date ... 205, 229
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel ... 40
Adjusting the lumbar support ... 38
Adjusting the temperature ... 53–54
Adjusting the time ... 205, 229
Advanced Grip Control ... 75–76
Advice on care and maintenance ... 153
Advice on driving ... 7, 92
Airbags ... 80, 82–84
Airbags, curtain ... 81–82
Airbags, front ... 80–81, 84
Airbags, lateral ... 81–82
Air conditioning ... 52, 54, 55, 57
Air conditioning, digital ... 56
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic ... 53–54
Air conditioning, electronic (with display screen) ... 57
Air conditioning, manual ... 53, 55
Air intake ... 53–54
Air vents ... 52
Alarm ... 33–34
Android Auto connection ... 220
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ... 73
Antitheft / Immobiliser ... 24
Apple CarPlay connection ... 201, 219
Applications ... 220
Armrest ... 38
Armrest, front ... 45
Assistance call ... 69–71
Assistance, emergency braking ... 73, 123
Audible warning ... 73
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) ... 188, 200, 224

B

Battery ... 144–145, 169, 171–172
Battery, 12 V ... 149, 169–170
Battery, charging ... 170–171
Battery, remote control ... 29, 59
Bench seat, one-piece, fixed ... 43
Blind spot monitoring system ... 128
Blind spot monitoring system, active ... 129
Blind spot sensors ... 127, 129
BlueHDi ... 149, 155
Bluetooth (hands-free) ... 189–190, 202, 225–226
Bluetooth (telephone) ... 202–203, 225–226
Bodywork ... 154
Bonnet ... 146
Boot lid ... 26, 28
Bottle holder ... 45
Brake discs ... 150
Brake lamps ... 166
Brakes ... 150
Braking assistance system ... 73–74
Braking, automatic emergency ... 122–123
Braking, dynamic emergency ... 98–99
Brightness ... 204
Bulbs ... 162
Bulbs (changing) ... 161–162
Bulbs (changing, type) ... 162

C

Cable, audio ... 224
Cable, Jack ... 224
Capacity, fuel tank ... 140–141
Cap, fuel filler ... 140–141
Care of the bodywork ... 154
CD ... 187, 200
CD, MP3 ... 187, 200
Central locking ... 23, 26
Changing a bulb ... 161–164
Changing a fuse ... 167–169
Changing a wheel ... 156, 158
Changing a wiper blade ... 66–67
Changing the remote control battery ... 29

Charger, induction 48
Charger, wireless 48
Checking the levels 147–149
Checking tyre pressures
(using the kit) 156, 158
Checks 147, 149–150
Checks, routine 149–150
Child lock 91
Children 79, 85
Children (safety) 91
Child seats 79, 82–85, 89, 90
Child seats, conventional 85
Child seats, i-Size 90–91
Child seats, ISOFIX 90
Cleaning (advice) 153–154
Closing the doors 23, 26
Collision Risk Alert 122
Connected applications 221
Connection, Bluetooth 189, 202–203, 221, 225–226
Connection, MirrorLink 201–202, 220
Connection, Wi-Fi network 221–222
Connectivity 219
Container, AdBlue® 152
Control, emergency boot release 28
Control, emergency door 23, 27–28
Control, heated seats 39
Control stalk, lighting 61, 63
Control stalk, wipers 65–68
Courtesy lamp 59
Courtesy lamp, front 60
Courtesy lamp, rear 60
Courtesy lamps 60
Cover, load space 50
Cruise control 112, 115–118, 121
Cruise control, adaptive 118
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 112
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function . . . 112
Cup holder 45

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) -
Digital radio 185, 199–200, 223
Date (setting) 205, 229
Daytime running lamps 63, 163–164
Daytime running lamps, LED 164
Deactivating the passenger airbag 80, 84–85
Deactivation of DSC (ESC) 74
Deadlocking 27
Defrosting 41, 55–56
Demisting 55–56
Demisting, rear 40, 56
Demisting, rear screen 40, 56
Dimensions 175
Dipstick 147
Direction indicators 62–63, 163, 165–166
Display, head-up 107–108
Doors, side 31
Doors, side-hinged 26–27
Driverâ€™s attention warning 129–130
Driving 92
Driving abroad 62
Driving aids camera (warnings) 109
Driving aids (recommendations) 108
Driving economically 7
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 73, 75

E

EBFD 73
Eco-driving (advice) 7
Economy mode 144–145
Electric windows 35
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 73
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 73
Emergency call 69–71
Emergency warning lamps 52, 72
Emissions control system, SCR 151
Energy economy mode 144–145
Engine compartment 147
Engine, Diesel 140, 147, 155, 178–180
Engine, petrol 147, 176–177
Engines 176–180
Environment 7, 29, 59
ESC (electronic stability control) 73
Expanded traffic sign recognition 113

F

Fatigue detection 129–130
Filling the AdBlue® tank 149, 152
Filling the fuel tank 140–141

Filter, air 150
Filter, oil 150
Filter, particle 149–150
Filter, passenger compartment 52, 149
Finisher 161
Fitting a wheel 159, 161
Fitting roof bars 145
Fittings, interior 45, 49
Flap, fuel filler 140–141
Flashing indicators 62–63, 166
Fluid, brake 148
Fluid, engine coolant 148
Foglamp, rear 166
Foglamps 165
Foglamps, front 61, 163
Foglamps, rear 61
Folding the rear seats 41–43
Frequency (radio) 223
Fuel 7, 140
Fuel consumption 7
Fuel tank 140–141
Fusebox, dashboard 167
Fusebox, engine compartment 167, 169
Fuses 167–169

G

Gauge, fuel 140–141
Gearbox, automatic 96, 100–105, 150
Gearbox, manual 100–101, 105, 150
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 101–103
Gear lever, manual gearbox 100–101
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 104
Glove box 45
G.P.S. 216

H

Hazard warning lamps 52, 72
headlamp adjustment 65
Headlamp adjustment 65
Headlamps, automatic dipping 63–64, 128
Headlamps, automatic illumination 62–63
Headlamps, dipped beam 61, 163–164
Headlamps, halogen 162
Headlamps, main beam 61, 163–164
Head restraints, front 45
Head restraints, rear 41–42
Head-up display 107–108
Heating 52–53, 55, 57–58
Heating, additional 33, 57–58
Heating, programmable 33, 57–58
Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC) 77
Hill Descent Control 77
Hill start assist 99–100
Horn 73

I

Ignition 96, 227
Ignition on 96
Immobiliser, electronic 93
Indicator, coolant temperature 16
Indicator lamps, operation 61
Indicators, direction 62
Inflating tyres 150, 181
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit) 156, 158
Infrared camera 109
Instrument panel 9, 110
Internet browser 217, 221
ISOFIX 89

J

Jack 158, 224
Jump starting 170

K

Key 23–24, 26–28
Key, electronic 23, 96
Keyless Entry and Starting 23, 25–26, 94, 96
Key with remote control 26
Kit, hands-free 189–190, 202, 225–226
Kit, puncture repair 155
Kit, temporary puncture repair 155–156, 158

L

Labels 4, 43
Labels, identification 181
Lamps, front 163–164
Lamps, parking 63
Lamps, rear 166
Lane departure warning active 124, 129
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 63, 162–164
Level, AdBlue® 149
Level, brake fluid 148
Level, Diesel additive 149–150
Level, engine coolant 16, 148
Level, engine oil 147
Levels and checks 147–149
Level, screenwash fluid 66, 149
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 63, 162–164
Lighting 61
Lighting, exterior 61
Lighting, guide-me home 63
Lighting, welcome 63
Loading 145
Load reduction mode 145
Locating your vehicle 24
Locking 23–24, 26
Locking from the inside 30
Low fuel level 140–141
Lumbar 38

M

Maintenance (advice) 153
Maintenance, routine 110, 149
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 108
Markings, identification 181
Mat 45, 110
Memorising a speed 121
Menu 201
Menu, main 183
Menus (audio) 196–197, 209–210
Messages 227
Messages, quick 227
Mirror, child surveillance 41
Mirror, rear view 41
Mirrors, door 40–41, 56, 127
Misfuel prevention 141
Mountings, ISOFIX 87
MP3 CD 187

N

Navigation 215–217
Navigation, connected 217–219
Net 50–51
Net, high load retaining 49
Number plate lamps 166–167

O

Obstacle detection 130
Oil change 147
Oil consumption 147
OIl, engine 147
On-board tools 155–156
Opening the bonnet 146
Opening the boot 23
Opening the doors 23

P

Pads, brake 150
Paint 154, 181
Paint colour code 181
Park Assist 134
Parking brake 96–97, 150
Parking brake, electric 97–99, 150
Parking sensors, audible and visual 130
Parking sensors, front 131
Parking sensors, rear 130
Plates, identification 181
Player, Apple® 188, 200
Player, AppleÂ® 224
Player, MP3 CD 187
Player, USB 186, 199, 224
Port, USB 47, 186, 199, 219, 224
Pressures, tyres 150, 158, 161, 181
Pre-tensioning seat belts 79
Priming pump 155

Priming the fuel system 155
Profiles 204, 228
Programmable cruise control 115
Protecting children 80, 82–85
Puncture 156, 158

R

Radar (warnings) 109
Radio 184–185, 197, 200, 222
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 185, 199–200, 223
Range, AdBlue 149
RDS 198, 223
Rear screen, demisting 56
Recharging the battery 170–171
Recirculation, air 53–54
Recovery 172
Reduction of electrical load 145
Regeneration of the particle filter 150
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 107
Reinitialising the remote control 29
Reminder, key in ignition 96
Reminder, lighting on 61–62
Remote control 23–27, 93
Removing a wheel 159, 161
Removing the mat 45
Replacing bulbs 161–162
Replacing fuses 167–169
Replacing the air filter 150
Replacing the oil filter 150
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 149
Reservoir, screenwash 149
Reversing camera 109, 132–133
Reversing lamps 166
Roof 46
Roof bars 145
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 155

S

Safety, children 80, 82–85
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 150
Screen menu map 201
Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 183
Screenwash, front 66
Screenwash, rear 66
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 151
Seat belts 77–78, 85
Seat, rear bench 41, 43
Seats, front 37–39
Seats, heated 39
Seats, rear 37, 41–44, 83
Sensors (warnings) 109
Serial number, vehicle 181
Service indicator 16
Servicing 16, 149
Settings, system 204, 228
Sidelamps 61, 63, 163–164
Side parking sensors 131
Side repeater 163
Sliding side door, electric 26, 32
Snow chains 106, 142
Snow chains, link 142
Socket, 12 V accessory 45, 47
Socket, 220 V 47
Socket, auxiliary 187, 200, 224
Socket, Jack 187, 224
Speed limiter 112–115, 121
Speed limit recognition 110–111
Speedometer 110
Stability control (ESC) 73–76
Starting a Diesel engine 140
Starting the engine 93
Starting the vehicle 94, 96, 101–103
Starting using another battery 170
Station, radio 184, 197, 222–223
Stay, bonnet 146
Steering mounted controls, audio 183–184, 195, 209
Steering wheel, adjustment 40
Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive 154
Stopping the vehicle 96, 101–103
Stop & Start 22, 53, 56, 104–106, 140, 146, 149, 169, 172
Storage 46
Storage boxes 49
Stowing rings 51
Sunshine sensor 52
Switching off the engine 93, 95
Synchronising the remote control 29

T

Tables of fuses 167–169
Tank, fuel 140–141
Technical data 176–180
Telephone 48, 189–191, 202–203, 225–227
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition 191
Temperature, coolant 16
Three flashes (direction indicators) 62
Time (setting) 205, 229
TMC (Traffic info) 216
Tools 155
Topping-up AdBlue® 152
Top Rear Vision 132
Towbar 74, 142–143
Towed loads 176–180
Towing another vehicle 172–174
Towing device 143
Towing eye 173
Traction control (ASR) 73, 75
Traffic information (TA) 184
Traffic information (TMC) 216
Trailer 74, 142
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 74
Trajectory control systems 73–74
Triangle, warning 52
Trip computer 21–22
Type of bulbs 162
Tyres 150, 181
Tyre under-inflation detection 106, 158

U

Under-inflation (detection) 106
Unlocking 23, 25–26
Unlocking from the inside 30
Updating the date 205, 229
Updating the time 205, 229
USB 186, 200, 219, 224

V

Ventilation 52–53, 57–58
Video 224
Voice commands 211–213

W

Warning and indicator lamps 11
Warning lamp, driver"s seat belt not fastened 78
Warning lamps 11
Warning lamp, seat belts 78
Warnings and indicators 11
Washer jets, heated 56
Washing 110
Washing (advice) 153–154
Weights 176–180
Welcome lighting 24
Wheel, spare 106, 150, 155–156, 158–159, 161
Windows, rear doors 36
Windscreen, heated 56
Windscreen wipers 65
Wiper blades (changing) 66–67
Wiper, rear 66
Wipers 65, 67–68
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 65, 67–68

Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4DCONCEPT
Groupe MAURY Imprimeur

Printed in the EU

11-19

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. NANTERRE : 642 050 199

CITROËN

INSPIRED BY YOU

ANG. 19K9C.0040